



PersianPod101.com



**+ BONUS
AUDIOBOOK**

**HOLIDAYS
IN IRAN**

LEARN PERSIAN

A COMPLETE PHRASE COMPILATION FOR

**TRAVELING TO
IRAN**

innovativeLANGUAGE.COM

innovativeLANGUAGE.COM

CLICK HERE to get our Persian Learning System! Get your **Free Lifetime Account!**



TRAVEL TO IRAN

Conversation Cheat Sheet

Create Your
FREE Account

CLICK

MONEY & SHOPPING

Is there an ATM nearby?

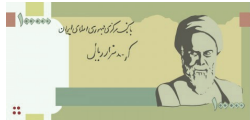
in nazdiki eiti em hast?

این نزدیکی ای تی ام هست؟

How much is ~ ?

~ chandeh?

~ چنده؟



one hundred thousand rial

sad hezaar riyaal

صد هزار ریال



fifty thousand rial

panjaah hezaar riyaal

پنجاه هزار ریال



twenty thousand rial

bist hezaar riyaal

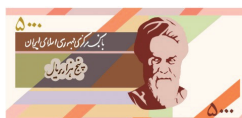
بیست هزار ریال



ten thousand rial

dah hezaar riyaal

ده هزار ریال



five thousand rial

panj hezaar riyaal

پنج هزار ریال



two thousand rial

do hezaar riyaal

دوهزار ریال



one thousand rial

yek hezaar riyaal

یکهزار ریال



five hundred rial

paansad riyaal

پانصد ریال



one hundred rial

yek sad riyaal

یکصد ریال

AROUND TOWN

Where is ~ ?

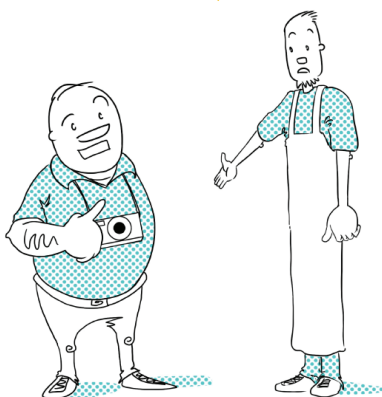
~ kojaa ast?

کجا است؟

I'd like to go to ~.

mikhaam beram (mikhaaham beravm)~.

میخواهم برم (می خواهم بروم)



Zayandeh river

zaayandeh rood

زاینده رود



Persepolis

takht-e jamshid

تخت جمشید



shrine of Imam Reza

haram-e emaam rezaa

حرم امام رضا



Imam mosque

Masjed-e emaam

مسجد امام



Arg-e bam

arg-e bam

ارگ بم



tomb of Hafez

aaraamgaah-e haafez

آرامگاه حافظ

SURVIVAL PHRASES

Please take me to ~.

lotfan man-o bebarin

(man raa bebarid) beh...

لطفا منو ببرین به (من را ببرید به) ...

Where is the station?

istgaah kojaast?

ایستگاه کجاست؟

Where is the restroom?

tovaalet kojaast?

توالت کجاست؟

COMMUNICATION

Hello.

salaam
سلام

Nice to meet you.

khoshvaghtam
خوشوقتتم

I am ~.

man ~ hastam
من ~ هستم

Excuse me.

babakhshid
بخشید

Please.

lotfan
لطفاً

Thank you.

mersi, mamnoon
مرسی, ممنون

I'm sorry.

mote'as-sefam
متاسفم

Yes.

baleh, aareh
بله , آره

No.

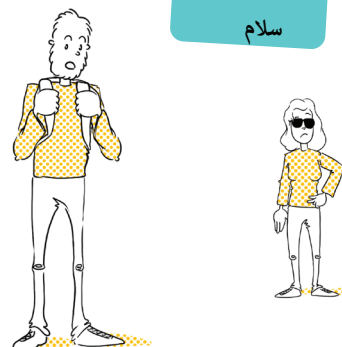
nah
نه

Excuse me.

bebakhshid
بخشید

Hello.

salaam
سلام



ASKING QUESTIONS

Do you understand?

motevaj-jeh mishin (mishavid)?
متوجه میشین (می شوید)?

Do you speak English?

mitoonin (mitavaanid) inglisi sohbat konin (konid)?
صحبت میتونین (می توانید) انگلیسی کنین (کنید)?

Can you eat this?

mitoonin in-o bokhorin (mitavaanid in raa bekhoid)?
میتونین اینو بخورین (می توانید این را بخورید)?

I understand.

motevaj-jeh misham (mishavam).
متوجه میشم (می شوم).

Yes, I do.

baleh mitoonam (mitavaanam).
بله میتونم (می توانم).

Of course.

albateh
البته

I don't understand.

motevaj-jeh nemisham (nemishavam).
متوجه نمیشم (می شوم).

No I don't.

na emitoonam (nemitavaanam).
نه میتونم (می توانم).

No, I can't eat it.

na nemitoonam (nemitavaanam) bokhoramesl
نه میتونم (می توانم) بخورمش.

I don't understand.

motevaj-jeh nemisham (nemishavam).
متوجه نمیشم (می شوم).



ORDERING FOOD



Ghormeh sabzi
ghormeh sabzi
رمه سبزی



Abgoosht
aabgoosht
آبگوشت



Chelokabab-e barg
chelo kabaab-e barg
چلوکباب برگ



gaz
gaz
گز



baqlava
baaghlavaa
باقلوا



kotlet
kotlet
کتلت



kookoo sabzi
kookoo sabzi
کوکو سبزی



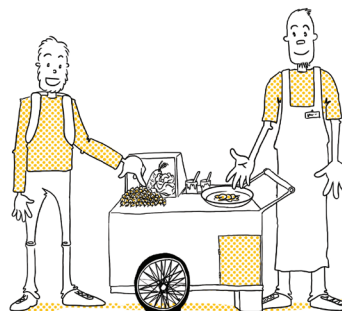
noodle soup
aash reshteh
آش رشته

~ please.

~ lotfan
~ لطفاً

What do you recommend?

shomaa chi pishnaaad mikonin (mikonid)?
شما چی پیشنهاد می کنین (می کنید)?



COUNTERS

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
yek	do	seh	chahaar	panj	shesh	haft	hasht	noh	dah
یک	دو	سه	چهار	پنج	شش	هفت	هشت	نه	ده

~ please.

~ taa lotfan
~ تا لطفاً

COUNTERS

FAMILY & RELATIVES

Conversation Cheat Sheet



FAMILY RELATIONS

What kind of person is your ~?

~ shomaa cheh joor shakhsi ast?

شما چه جور شخصی است؟ ~



grandmother
maadar bozorg
مادر بزرگ



grandfather
pedar bozorg
پدر بزرگ



uncle
amoo , daaei
عمو، دایی



cousin
pesar amoo,
dokhtar amoo
پسر عمو، دختر عمو



aunt
ammeh , khaaleh
عمه، خاله



me
man
من



father
pedar
پدر



mother
maadar
مادر



young sister
khaahar-e koochak
خواهر کوچک



older sister
khaahar-e bozorg
خواهر بزرگ



older brother
baraadar-e bozorg
برادر بزرگ



younger brother
baraadar-e koochak
برادر کوچک

How is your mother?

maadaret chetor ast?
مادرت چطور است؟

My mother is well.

maadaram khoob ast.
مادرم خوب است.

FAMILY RELATIONS



husband
shohar , hamsar
شوهر، همسر



wife
zan , hamsar
زن، همسر



son
pesar , farzand
پسر، فرزند



daughter
dokhtar , farzand
دختر، فرزند

Forward my greetings to your ~.

salaam-e man raa beh ~ beresaanid.
سلام من را به ~ برسانید.

PETS

I have a ~.
man yek ~ daaram.
من یک ~ دارم.

dog
sag
سگ

cat
gorbeh
گربه

bird
parandeh
پرنده

fish
maahi
ماهی

bunny
khargoosh
خرگوش

snake
maar
مار

FIRST MEETING

Nice to meet you.

az molaqaat-e shomaa khoshvaqtam.
از ملاقات شما خوشوقتیم.

Where are you from?

ahl-e kojaa hastid?
اهل کجا هستید؟

Can I sit here?

mitoonam injaa beshinam?
می تونم اینجا بشینم؟

What's your name?

esm-e shomaa chiyeh?
اسم شما چیه؟

I'm from Tehran.

man tehraani hastam.
من تهرانی هستم.

What is this?

in chi ast? , in chiyeh?
این چی است؟ , این چیه؟

How are you?

haal-e shomaa chetor ast? , chetori?
حال شما چطور است؟ , چطوری؟

This is for you.

in baraay-e shomaa ast.
این برای شما است.

How long will you stay?

cheh modat mimaanid?
چه مدت می مانید؟

I've heard a lot about you.

dar baareh-ye shomaa ziyaad shenidam.
در باره شما زیاد شنیدم.

How many people are there in your family?

khaanevaadeh-ye shomaa
chand nafar hastand?
خانواده شما چند نفر هستند؟

It was nice to meet you.

az molaqaat-e shomaa kheili
khoshvaqt shodam.
از ملاقات شما خوشوقت شدم.

HOLIDAYS AND OBSERVANCES

What do you do on ~?

dar ~ cheh kar mikonid?
در ~ چه کاری کنید؟



Anniversary of the Islamic Revolution

saalgard piroozi-e enqelaab-e eslaami
سالگرد پیروزی انقلاب اسلامی



Iranian New Year

nowrooz
نوروز



Nature day

rooz-e tabiat
روز طبیعت



Eid -e Ghadir-e Khom

eyd-e ghadir-e khom
عید غدیر خم

When is ~?

~ key ast?
کی است؟

Please tell me more about ~.

lotfan dar baareh-ye ~
bishtar baraayam begoo.
لطفاً در باره ~ بیشتر برایم بگو.



End of Ramadan

eyd-e fetr
عید فطر



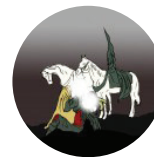
Feast of Sacrifice

eyd-e qorbaan
عید قربان



Day of martyrdom of Imam Hossein

rooz-e shahaadat-e emaam hoseyn
روز شهادت امام حسین



Arbaeen-e Hosseini

arba'in
اربعین

CELEBRATIONS

Happy birthday!

tavalodet mobaarak!
تولدت مبارک!

April Fools!

doroogh-e aavril
دروغ آوریل!

Merry Christmas!

kerismas mobaarak!
کرسمس مبارک!

Congratulations!

tabrik migam!
تبریک میگم!

Happy Halloween!

haalovin mobaarak!
هالووین مبارک!

Happy New Year!

saal-e no mobaarak!
سال نومبارک!

CLICK HERE to get our Persian Learning System! Get your **Free Lifetime Account!**



DINING LIKE A CHAMP

Conversation Cheat Sheet

Create Your
FREE Account

CLICK 

Phrases You Need to Know at the Dining Table >>>

I have a reservation at nine.

man baraay-e saa'at-e noh rezerv
daaram.

من برای ساعت نه رزرو دارم.

Do you have a table for two?

miz baraay-e do nafar daarid?
میز برای دو نفر دارید؟

May I have the menu?

misheh yek menoo bedid?
میشه یک منو بدید؟

May I order?

misheh sefaresh bedam?
میشه سفارش بدم؟

What do you recommend?

shomaa cheh pishnaaad
mikonid?
شما چه پیشنهاد می کنید؟

I'll have this, please.

man ein raa khaaham daasht,
lotfan.
من این را خواهم داشت، لطفاً.

Excuse me.

bebakhshid.
ببخشید.

My order hasn't come yet.

sefaresh-e man hanooz
nayaamadeh.
سفارش من هنوز نیامده.

Check, please.

soorat hesaab lotfan.
صورت حساب لطفاً.

Top Words You'll Need at the Restaurant >>>

POINT & SAY
noqteh&sohbat
نقطه و صحبت

~ please.
~lotfan.
لطفاً.



appetizer
pish ghazaa
پیش غذا



main dish
ghazaa-ye asli
غذای اصلی



dessert
deser
دسر



chicken
Morgh
مرغ



beef
goosht-e gaav
گوشت گاو



pork
goosht-e khook
گوشت خوک



salad
Saalaad
سالاد



seafood
ghazaa-ye
daryaaei
غذای دریایی

What are today's specials?

ghazaa-ye makhsoos-e emrooz
chist?
غذای مخصوص امروز چیست؟

Can I have the drinks menu?

misheh menoo-ye nooshidani raa
daashteh baasham?
میشه منوی نوشیدنی را داشته باشم؟

Can I have some more ~?

misheh bishtar daashteh
baasham?
میشه بیشتر داشته باشم؟

Counters

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
yek	do	seh	chaahaar	panj	shesh	haft	hasht	noh	dah
یک	دو	سه	چهار	پنج	شش	هفت	هشت	نه	ده

How to Choose The Best Foods to Fit Your Preferences

With ~, please.

baa ~ lotfan.

با ~ لطفاً.

meat

goosht
گوشت

fish

maahi
ماهی

vegetables

sabzijaat
سبزیجات

butter

kareh
کره

sugar

shekar
شکر

olive oil

roghan zeytoon
روغن زیتون

Without ~, please.

bi ~ lotfan.

بی ~ لطفاً.

bell pepper

felfel-e shirin
فلفل شیرین

onion

piaaz
پیاز

wine

sharaab
شراب

cheese

panir
پنیر

tomato

gojeh farangi
گوجه فرنگی

alcohol

alkol
الکل

Does this dish contain any ~?

aayaa ein ghazaa hich~daareh?

آیا این غذا هیچ ~ داره؟

I can't eat/drink ~.

man nemitoonam ~ bekhoram/
benoosham.

من نمی تونم ~ بخورم/ بنوشم.

Please remove ~ from this dish.

lotfan ~ raa az ein ghazaa hazf konid.

لطفاً ~ را از این غذا حذف کنید.

Table Request In The Restaurant

Can you bring me (a) ~?

misheh baraay-e man yek~
biyaarid?

میشه برای من یک ~ بیارید؟

I need (a) ~.

man yek~
mikhaam.

من یک ~ میخوام.

spoon

qaashoq
قاشق

fork

changaal
چنگال

knife

chaaqoo
چاقو

napkin

dastmaal
دستمال

salt

namak
نمک

black pepper

felfel siyaah
فلفل سیاه

water

aab
آب

bread

naan
نان

drink

nooshidani
نوشیدنی

menu

meno
منو

coffee

qahveh
قهوه

dessert

deser
دسر

Complimenting and Criticizing the Food

It's delicious!

ein khoshmazeh ast.

این خوشمزه است.

It looks tasty.

beh nazar khoshmazeh

miyaad.

به نظر خوشمزه میاد.

It's very good.

ein kheili khoob ast.

این خیلی خوب است.

It's overcooked.

ein ziyaad pokhteh shodeh ast.

این زیاد پخته شده است.

It lacks salt.

ein bi namakeh.

این بی نمکه.

It's raw!

ein khaam ast.

این خام است.

It smells so nice!

ein booy-e kheili khoobi daareh.

این بوی خیلی خوبی داره.

This is not fresh.

ein taazeh nist.

این تازه نیست.

It's too spicy.

ein kheili tondeh.

این خیلی تنده.

Food Allergies & Restrictions!

I am allergic to ~.

man beh ~ hasaasiyat
daaram.

من به ~ حساسیت دارم.

meat

goosht
گوشت

eggs

tokhm-e
morgh
تخم مرغ

milk

shir
شیر

peanuts

baadaam
zamini
بادام زمینی

shellfish

sadaf
صدف

wheat

Gandom
گندم

soy

soyaa
سویا

fish

maahi
ماهی

I am a vegetarian.

man giyaah khaaram.

من گیاهخوار هستم.

I am a vegan.

man giyaah khaar-e kaamel hastam.

من گیاهخوار کامل هستم.

I can't eat pork.

man nemitoonam goosht-e

khook bekhoram.

من نمی تونم گوشت خوک بخورم.



PersianPod101.com

Save 50% on any
PersianPod101.com subscription
with coupon code

AUDIOBOOK

Gain access to hundreds of audio and video lessons, lesson notes, online vocabulary, flashcards, the voice recording tool and more with a Basic or Premium Subscription!

Click here to get started today!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #1

How to Say "Thank You!" in Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

1

PERSIAN

1. تشکر می‌کنم

2. خیلی تشکر می‌کنم

3. متشکرم

4. خیلی متشکرم

ENGLISH

1. Thank you.
2. Thank you so much.
3. Thanks.
4. Many thanks.

ROMANIZATION

1. Tashakkor Mikonam.
2. Kheili Tashakkor Mikonam.
3. Moteshakkeram.
4. Kheili Moteshakkeram.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
تشکر	tashakkor	thanks	verb
می کنم	mikonam	do	verb
خیلی	kheili	much	adjective
متشکرم	moteshakkeram	thanks	noun
تشکر می کنم	tashakkor mikonam	thank you	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

من از این بابت تشکر می کنم. "I thank you for this matter."	من هر روز صبح ورزش می کنم. Man har rooz sobh varzesh mikonam. "I do sporting activities every morning."
خیلی متشکرم. "Thank you so much."	واقعا از تو متشکرم. "I really appreciate it."
"Thank you very much."	خیلی تشکر می کنم.

GRAMMAR

Wherever your destination may be, manners are a must! Iran is no different. So in our very first lesson, we'll be teaching you a simple phrase that is bound to come in handy throughout your trip to Iran. I can't stress this enough: a little bit of language can go a long way!

In Persian, "Thank you" is:

Tashakkor Mikonam تشکر می کنم

The first word, *Tashakkor* تشکر, means "thanks."

After this comes *Mikonam* می کنم, meaning "I do thank you."

You can emphasize *Tashakkor Mikonam* by adding *Kheili* خیلی, which means literally "a lot"

or "so much."

That makes ***Kheili Tashakkor Mikonam*** خیلی تشکر می کنم, which would be equivalent to "Thank you so much," a politer expression than just *Tashakkor Mikonam*. تشکر می کنم

There are other ways to express one's gratitude in Persian, but they are all variations of *Kheili Tashakkor Mikonam*. خیلی تشکر می کنم

There will be occasions when you will really want to show your appreciation and politeness. On these occasions, you should use the expression *Tashakkor Mikonam*. Another way to thank someone is *Moteshakkeram*, which is simply another form of the verb *Tashakkor*.

So "Thanks" in Persian is:

Moteshakkeram. متشکرم

And "Many thanks" is:

Kheili Moteshakkeram. خیلی متشکرم

The word *Kheili*, meaning "a lot," is used to make the phrase more polite.

This is followed by *Moteshakeram*, which means something like "thanks."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

By far, *Moteshakkeram* is the most common way to say "Thanks." Use the more polite version *Tashakor Mikonam* sparingly, in very special situations, like when you have been helped a lot by somebody. Remember: when in doubt, keeping it simple is always your safest bet. You don't have to worry about formal or informal situations; *Moteshakkeram* can be used with just about anyone, anywhere, and anytime. You say *Moteshakkeram* when the waiter brings your food or drinks, when the clerk in the hotel takes your luggage to your room, and when somebody welcomes or congratulates you. No matter what the person's profession or age, *Moteshakkeram* will always be an appropriate response.

Quick tip 2

If you are around friends, you might hear an alternative to *Tashakor Mikonam*: *Ghorbanat*. This is similar to something like "Cheers" or "Love you," it's mostly used among young people

and is very informal. If you know the people well enough, feel free to throw one of these in—your knowledge of informal Persian will surely be appreciated.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #2

How to Say "You're Welcome" in Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

2

PERSIAN

1. خوش آمدید
2. خواهش می‌کنم
3. قابل ندارد
4. قابلی نداره
5. هیچ قابلی ندارد
6. هیچ قابلی نداره

ENGLISH

1. You're welcome.
2. Don't mention it.
3. It's nothing. (more formal)
4. It's nothing. (casual)
5. It's nothing at all. (more formal)
6. It's nothing at all. (casual)

ROMANIZATION

1. Khosh aamadid.

CONT'D OVER

2. Khaahesh mikonam.
3. Ghaabel nadaarad.
4. Ghaabeli nadaareh.
5. Hich ghaabeli nadaarad.
6. Hich ghaabeli nadaareh.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
خوش	khosh	well	adjective
آمدید	aamadid	come	verb
خواهش می کنم	khaahesh mikonam	please	adverb
قابل ندارد	ghaabel nadaarad	not at all	verb
هیچ	hich	nothing	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

اینجا خوش می گذره. "Here, all is well."	تا حالا اینجا آمدید؟ "Had you come here before?"
خواهش می کنم با ما بیائید. "Please come with us."	این برای شما اصلا قابل ندارد. "For you, not at all."
من به او هیچ نگفتم. "I told him nothing."	

GRAMMAR

In Persian, "You're welcome" is:

Khosh aamadid.

Literally this means "You are welcomed."

The word *Khosh* means "well; good."

Amadid means "you have come."

It means "good that you have come" or "you are welcome."

You can also respond to someone who has thanked you by using *Khahesh mikonam*. This means "please," but here has the nuance of "Don't mention it." Literally, it means "I request you not to mention it."

Khahesh mikonam.

The first word, *Khahesh*, means "request."

The second word, *mikonam*, means "I do request."

You might sometimes hear *Ghaabel nadaarad*, which means "It's nothing."

Ghaabel nadaarad.

This phrase starts with the word *ghaabel*, which means "value."

Next we have *nadaarad*, meaning "does not have."

Ghaabeli nadaareh is the casual form of the phrase *Ghaabel nadaarad*.

You can emphasize *ghaabeli nadaareh* by adding *Hich*, which means literally "nothing."

Remember:

Khosh aamadid means "You're welcome."

Khaahesh mikonam means "No problem."

Ghaabel nadaarad means "It's nothing" or "Not at all." in a more formal way

The more casual form of that is *Ghaabeli nadaareh*.

Of the expressions we have seen, please keep in mind that you can use *Khaahesh mikonam* and *Khosh aamadid* in any situation, formal or informal, while *Ghaabel nadaarad* tends to be used on more informal occasions. And an even more casual form is *Ghaabeli nadaareh*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

The phrase *Khosh Amadid* has one more use, actually. When you enter cities in Iran, you will notice a sign which reads *Khosh Amadid be...*, meaning "Welcome to" This is a welcome sign seen in roads, airports and bus terminals.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #3

Getting What You Want Using Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

3

PERSIAN

1. لطفاً

2. این، لطفاً

3. آن، لطفاً

4. خواهش می‌کنم

ENGLISH

1. Please.
2. This, please.
3. That, please.
4. Please (followed by a phrase or verb)

ROMANIZATION

1. Lotfan
2. In, lotfan.
3. An, lotfan.
4. Kharesh mikonam.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
لطفا	lotfan	please	adverb
این	in	this	pronoun
آن	an	that	pronoun
خواهش	khaahash	please	adverb
می کنم	mikonam	do	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>لطفا مرا کمک کنید.</p> <p>Lotfan mara komak konid.</p> <p>"Please help me."</p>	<p>می توانید لطفا میز را کنار بزنید؟</p> <p>Mitavaanid lotfan miz ra کنار bezanid?</p> <p>"Could you please put the table aside."</p>
<p>از این طرف باید رفت.</p> <p>Az in taraf baayad raft.</p> <p>"We have to go this way."</p>	<p>آن طرف رودخانه زیبا تر است.</p> <p>An tarafe roodkhaane zibaatar ast.</p> <p>"It is more beautiful on that side of the river."</p>
<p>این خواهش او را نمی توانم انجام بدهم.</p> <p>In khaahash oo ra nemitavaanam anjaam bedaham.</p> <p>"I cannot answer to his request."</p>	<p>من هر روز صبح ورزش می کنم.</p> <p>Man har rooz sobh varzesh mikonam.</p> <p>"I do sporting activities every morning."</p>

GRAMMAR

This lesson's phrase will help you take matters into your own hands! In this lesson we'll take a look at the word "please," which will be very important when you need to ask for something.

In Persian, "please" is:

lotfan

Let's take a closer look at *lotfan*. The easiest way to use this word is by pointing at something and saying **In, lotfan** meaning "This one, please," or **An, lotfan** meaning "That one, please."

In means "this."

And *an* means "that."

Please remember that in Iran it is a little rude to point at people. But pointing at things, especially when you are trying to buy something at the market, or when it helps to illustrate your point, is perfectly okay. Just make sure you say *Tashakkor mikonam* meaning "Thank you" when the object is handed to you.

Another phrase for "please" is ***Khahesh mikonam***. You might remember that this also means "You're welcome." We use this phrase to ask someone to do something for us, and it is usually followed by a verb or phrase.

Any sentence with the phrase *Khahesh mikonam* is very polite and a little bit formal.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

We have learned the sentences *In, lotfan* ("This, please") and *An lotfan* ("That please"). *In* and *An* point to objects near us and far from us; just like "this" and "that," but they don't define the object you are pointing to. To define the object you have to add *Az*, (literally meaning "from") before *In* or *An*, and name the object after *In* and *An*. Just like *Az in sibha lotfan*, ("From these apples, please").

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #4 Basic Persian Greetings

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar

4

PERSIAN

1. صبح بخیر

2. روز بخیر

3. عصر بخیر

4. شب بخیر

5. سلام

ENGLISH

1. Good morning.
2. Good day.
3. Good evening. (coming)
4. Good night. (going)
5. Hi.

ROMANIZATION

1. Sobhe be kheir.
2. Rooz be kheir.
3. Asr be kheir.

CONT'D OVER

4. Shab be kheir.

5. Salam.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
صبح به خیر	sobh be kheir	good morning	interjection
سلام	salaam	hello	interjection
عصر	asr	evening	noun
روز	rooz	day	noun
شب	shab	night	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>هر وقت او را می بینم صبح به خیر می گویم.</p> <p>Har vaght oo raa mibinam sobh be kheir migooyam.</p> <p>"Whenever I see him, I say good morning to him."</p>	<p>او هیچ وقت به من سلام نمی کند.</p> <p>Oo hich vaght be man salaam nemikonad.</p> <p>"He never says hello to me."</p>
<p>امروز عصر می توانیم همدیگر را ببینیم.</p> <p>Emruz asr mitavaanim ham digar ro bebinim.</p> <p>"We can meet this evening."</p>	<p>روزها چکار می کنید؟</p> <p>Roos haa che kaar mikonid?</p> <p>"What do you do during the day?"</p>
<p>Har shab baayad kaar konam.</p> <p>"I have to work every night."</p>	<p>هر شب باید کار کنم.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson, we'll cover basic greetings for the appropriate time of the day. As there are quite a few to cover, let's jump right in.

In Persian, "Good morning" is

Sobhe be kheir.

The first word, *sobhe*, means "morning."

The second and third words, *Be kheir*, which literally mean "be good" in Persian, follow *sobhe*. Here it is again:

It means "let the morning be good to you." These three words come together to mean "Good morning."

In Persian we don't use "Good afternoon," as it is used elsewhere, but use "Good day":

Rooz be kheir.

The first word, *rooz*, means "day."

The second and third words are *Be kheir*, just as in "Good morning," meaning "be good."

In Persian, "Good evening" is:

Asr be kheir.

The first word, *asr*, means "evenings."

The second two words, *be kheir*, as we've already mentioned, mean "be good."

Upon leaving, you say ***Shab be kheir***. This is "Good night."

The only new word here is *Shab*, meaning "night."

You can use all of these in formal situations or with strangers. You can say *Sobhe be kheir* meaning "Good morning" and *Shab be kheir* meaning "Good night" with your friends, too.

Let's take a look at a greeting you can use with your friends now.

The most common word is:

Salam.

Salam is "Hi" in English.

Use this only with people you are already on friendly terms with, or with young people in

restaurants, bars, or cafés.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #5 Persian Farewells

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

5

PERSIAN

1. خدا حافظ

2. میبینمت

3. بای بای

4. بدرود

ENGLISH

1. Goodbye.

2. See you.

3. Bye bye.

4. Farewell.

ROMANIZATION

1. Khoda hafez.

2. Mibinamet.

3. By by.

4. Bedrood.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
خداحافظ	khodaa haafez	good bye	interjection
می بینمت	mibinamet	see you	verb
بای بای	by by	bye bye	interjection
بدرود	bedrood	farewell	interjection
حافظ	haafez	protect	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>باید از او خداحافظ کنی. Baayad az oo khodaa haafezi koni. "You must say good bye to her."</p>	<p>ماه مارس حتما می بینمت. Mahe Mars hatman mibinamet. "I will definitely see you in March."</p>
<p>با اون بای بای کن. Baa oon by by kon. "Wave bye bye to him."</p>	<p>بدرود دوست من، تا سال دیگر. Bedrood dooste man, ta saale digar. "Farewell my friend, until next year."</p>
<p>خدای شما را حفظ کند. Khodaa shomaa raa hefz konad. "May God protect you."</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson we'll introduce parting expressions, or farewells.

A parting expression that we can use any time of the day to strangers or friends is **Khoda hafez**, which literally means "May God protect you." You can think of it as a Persian version of "Goodbye" or "bye bye."

You can also say **Mibinamet**, which means "See you."

This is a form of the Persian word that means "to see." It's used with people we know and will possibly see again. Remember that this is rather informal, and used for friends.

Another parting phrase is **By by**, which is "bye bye" from English. It is used the same way in Persian as in English.

Put it with *mibinamet* and you get "Bye bye, see you."

By by, mibinamet.

A formal way to bid farewell is **Bedrood**, which is not used so often. Its exact meaning is "farewell."

This is rather a literary and poetic way to say goodbye.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

It is a good idea to use the polite form of the word "Goodbye" if you are talking to older people. The most polite form shows more respect: *Khoda Hafez* or *Khoda Negahdar* ("God keeps you in safety").

Quick tip 2

There are many different ways to say goodbye in Persian among friends. You can try the obvious steal from English, *By by*, or you can use *mibinamet*.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #6

Where Is the Bathroom? in Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

6

PERSIAN

1. توالٲ كجاست؟

2. ببخشيد دستشویی كجاست؟

3. توالٲ زنانه كجاست؟

4. توالٲ مردانه كجاست؟

5. زنانه

6. مردانه

ENGLISH

1. Where is the toilet? (informal)
2. Excuse me, where is the bathroom? (formal)
3. Where is the ladies' room?
4. Where is the men's room?
5. Women.
6. Men.

ROMANIZATION

1. Toalet kjasst?

CONT'D OVER

2. Bebakshid, dastshooii kojasst?
3. Toalete zananeh kojasst?
4. Toalete mardaneh kojasst?
5. Zananeh.
6. Mardaneh.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
توالت	toalet	toilet	noun
دست شویی	dastshooii	bathroom	noun
کجاست	kojaast	where	adverb
زنانه	zanaaneh	ladies	noun
مردانه	mardaaneh	men	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>نمی دانم توالت کجاست. Nemidaanam toalet kojaast.</p> <p>"I don't know where the toilet is."</p>	<p>می دانید دست شویی کدام طرف است؟ Midaanid dastshooii kojaast?</p> <p>"Do you know where the bathroom is?"</p>
<p>از کجا آمده اید؟ Az koja amadeid?</p> <p>"Where do you come from?"</p>	<p>مغازه طلافروشی کجاست؟ Maghaaze talaa foroushi kojaast?</p> <p>"Where is the jewelry shop?"</p>

<p>اینجا پوشاک زنانه می فروشند. Injaa pooshak zanaaneh miforoushad. "Here they sell women's wear."</p>	<p>این مغازه لباس های مردانه است. In maghaazeh lebaashaaye mardaaneh ast. "This shop sells men's clothes."</p>
--	--

GRAMMAR

In this lesson, we'll cover an extremely important phrase: "Where is the toilet?"

In Persian, "Where is the toilet?" is:

Toalet kjasst?

Let's break this down. The first word, *toalet*, means "toilet."

This is followed by *kjasst*, which in Persian means "where is."

The phrase *Toalet kjasst?* sounds a little informal. You can make it polite by adding *Bebakhshid*, that is translated as "Excuse me" in the beginning:

Bebakhshid toalet kjasst?

Another formal way to ask "Excuse me, where is the bathroom?" is:

Bebakhshid, dastshooii kjasst?

Bebakhshid literally means "excuse me." If you use it in questions, it gives people an extra-polite impression.

The second word, *Dastshooii*, means "washroom."

After that is *kjasst*, which again means "where is."

If you are looking for the ladies' room, the phrase is:

Toalete zananeh kjasst?

First is *toalet*, again, which means "toilet."

Zananeh means "ladies'."

Then we have *kjasst*, which again means "where is."

If you are looking for the men's room, the question for that is:

Toalete Mardaneh kijasst?

Mardaneh means "mens'."

Just replace the word *zananeh* ("ladies") with *mardaneh* ("men's")

Let's hear both of the sentences one more time:

Toalete zananeh kijasst?

Toalete mardaneh kijasst?

When you finally get to the bathroom, there may be one last hurdle. At some bathrooms, only Persian words are written on the doors! But don't panic!

As we've seen above, the word for "men" is:

mardaneh. مردانه

And for "women" you'll see:

zananeh. زنان

There may not be many public bathrooms for tourists to use. This means your best option is to stop at either a café or a restaurant and use the bathroom there. Understandably, café owners aren't always too keen on having people stop in, just to use their bathroom. Since you'll be a tourist, they will welcome you, and let you use the toilet. So to be polite, you might want to buy a bottle of water or order a coffee before asking *Bebakhshid, toalet kijasst?*

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

It may not always be very easy to find a public toilet in Iran, but you can try. If you are on the street, you'll probably want to say "Where can I find the nearest toilet?" as opposed to "Where is THE toilet?" This first sentence in Persian would be:

Toalet in nazadikiha hast?

Nazadikiha means "close; nearby."

Quick tip 2

The Persian word for "Excuse me" is *Bebakhshid*. Just pop this in front of any of the sentences we've learned in this lesson and you're being very polite. For example: *Bebakhshid dastshooii kijasst?* or *Bebakhshid toilet mardaneh kijasst?* I hope you all remember what it means: "Excuse me, where is bathroom?" or "Excuse me, where is the mens' room?"

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #7

Use English to Your Advantage in Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

7

PERSIAN

1. انگلیسی میدانید؟

2. انگلیسی میدونی؟

3. آلمانی میدانید؟

4. بله، انگلیسی میدانم

5. نه، انگلیسی نمی دانم

ENGLISH

1. Do you know English? (formal)
2. Do you know English? (informal)
3. Do you know German? (formal)
4. Yes, I do know English.
5. No, I don't know English.

ROMANIZATION

1. Inglissi midanid?
2. Inglissi midooni?
3. Almani midanid?

CONT'D OVER

4. Bale, Inglissi midanam

5. Na, Inglissi nemidanam

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
انگلیسی	Inglisi	English	noun
می دانید	midaanid	do you know?	verb
آلمانی	Almaani	German	noun
بله	bale	yes	noun
می دونی	midooni	you know	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>در یک کلاس انگلیسی ثبت نام کردم. Dar yek kelaas Inglisi sabte naam kardam.</p> <p>"I registered for an English class."</p>	<p>آیا می دانید چگونه می توانم بلیط تهیه کنم؟ Aya midanid chegooneh mitavanam bilit tahiey konam?</p> <p>"Do you know how can I get a ticket?"</p>
<p>هیچ وقت آلمانی یاد نگرفتم. Hich vaght Almani yad nagereftam.</p> <p>"I never learned German."</p>	<p>اگر مایل هستید کافی است بگوئید بله. Agar mayel hastid kafi ast begooid baleh.</p> <p>"If you agree, it is enough to say yes."</p>
<p>بله، حتما با من تماس بگیر. Bale, hatman ba man tamas begir.</p> <p>"Yes, please do contact me."</p>	<p>می دونی که من از این گل ها خوشم می آید. Midooni ke man az in golha khosam miayad.</p> <p>"You know I like these flowers."</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson we'll cover another extremely important phrase: "Do you know English?" Using this phrase as opposed to speaking English at someone is important for many reasons. For one, if the party you're speaking to doesn't understand English, at least they'll be able to understand what you're asking. Furthermore, it shows a lot of respect on your part, because you've made an effort to learn even a little bit of the language. For these reasons and many more, we're going to cover this very important phrase.

In Persian, "Do you know English?" is:

Inglissi midanid?

The first word, *Inglissi*, means "English."

After this comes *midanid*, a form of the verb for "to know" meaning "you know."

The phrase that we just learned is formal. This means you can use it in situations with older people or with people you don't know.

When you're speaking to young people, it's OK to use informal speech. In that case, you will say:

Inglissi midooni?

Here we drop the *d* from the end of the word *midanid* and change the *a* to double *oo*: *midooni*. In Persian, we have two forms of language: a formal or written style and an informal or spoken style. *Midooni* is the informal spoken version of *midanid*, which is the written style.

Again, you can use the formal *Inglissi midanid?* with older people or those you don't know. *Inglissi midooni* is more friendly and informal. Do not use it with people you don't know or with elders.

Now for a change, let's try a different language: German.

"Do you know German?" is:

Almani midanid?

The word for "German" is:

Almani

Here, just the word for the language changes; the rest is the same.

When you ask whether someone speaks another language besides Persian, you might get the answer in Persian. Here are a few ways they might answer this question.

"Yes, I know English" would be:

Bale, Inglissi midanam.

The first word, *Bale*, means "yes."

After this comes the word for "English," *Inglissi*, which we've seen before.

Finally, we have *midanam*, which comes from the verb for "to know" to mean "I know."

This phrase could be made shorter, just by saying "Yes":

Bale.

Or by taking out the word for English and just saying "Yes, I do know":

Bale, midanam.

If the answer is negative, Iranian people might say "No, I don't know English":

Na, Inglissi nemidanam.

The first word, *na*, means "no."

Again we have the word for "English," *Inglissi*.

Finally, we have the negative form of the word "to know" meaning "I don't know."

nemidanam

Sometimes, people will leave out the word for "English" and just say "I don't":

Na, nemidanam.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

The number of English speakers in Iran is quite high. Most people know English but have no chances to practice it. In tourist areas, people can generally speak many languages. However, you can never go wrong by knowing the local language, so keep studying these Survival Phrases!

Quick tip 2

Iranian people are very aware of the unique language they speak. The roots of the language

go back to Persia and the Persian Empire, with the first known written records dating back nearly 2500 years. So if you learn just a couple of sentences in Persian, it will definitely be appreciated and will take you a long way.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #8

I Don't Understand in Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

8

PERSIAN

1. نمیفهمم

2. نمیدونم

3. فارسی بلد نیستم

ENGLISH

1. I don't understand.
2. I don't know.
3. I don't know Persian.

ROMANIZATION

1. Nemifahmam.
2. Nemidoonam.
3. Farsi balad nistam.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
نمی دونم	nemidoonam	I don't know	
بلد	balad	know	verb

نیستم	nistam	am not	verb
فارسی	Faarsi	Persian	noun
نمی فهمم	nemifahmam	I don't understand	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>نمی دونم چگونه بروم پیش او. Nemidoonam chegooneh beravam pishe oo.</p> <p>"I don't know how to go to him."</p>	<p>بلد نیستم بروم خانه آنها. Balad nistam beravam khaneh anha.</p> <p>"I don't know how to go to their house."</p>
<p>من برای این کار مناسب نیستم. Man baraaye in kaar monaaseb nistam.</p> <p>"I am not suitable for this job."</p>	<p>او فارسی را خیلی زود یاد گرفت. Oo Farsi ra khili zood yad gereft.</p> <p>"He learned Persian so fast."</p>
<p>نمی فهمم چرا این اتفاق افتاد. Nemifahmam chera in etefagh oftad.</p> <p>"I don't understand why this has happened."</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson we shall see a very useful phrase meaning "I don't understand." It is useful, of course, because many times you won't immediately pick up on what people are saying.

In Persian, "I don't understand" is

Nemifahmam.

Another thing you can say when you're confused is "I don't know," which in Persian is:

Nemidoonam.

Another option is to tell someone, "I don't know Persian." This phrase in Persian is:

Farsi balad nistam.

The first word, *Farsi*, means "Persian."

This is followed by *balad nistam*, which means "do not know."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

When engaged in a conversation with an Iranian person, you're likely not to understand everything they're saying to you. This could be for a number of reasons: their accent, how fast they're speaking, or the vocabulary that they're using. If this happens, don't be afraid to say *Nemifahmam*. Iranian people will be more than happy to explain what they have just said.

Quick tip 2

After Iranian people have told you something, they might ask you *Fahmidid?* meaning "Did you understand?" If you did, you can answer with *Fahmidam*, which means "I understood."

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #9

Can You Say it Again? in Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

9

PERSIAN

1. لطفاً تکرار کنید
2. همیشه لطفاً تکرار کنید
3. همیشه دوباره بگید؟
4. همیشه لطفاً دوباره بگید؟
5. آهسته تر لطفاً
6. همیشه لطفاً آهسته تر تکرار کنید؟

ENGLISH

1. Repeat that, please
2. Can you repeat that, please?
3. Can you say that again?
4. Can you say that again, please?
5. More slowly, please.
6. Can you repeat that more slowly, please?

ROMANIZATION

1. Lotfan tekrar konid

CONT'D OVER

2. Misheh lotfan tekrar konid?
3. Misheh دوباره begid?
4. Misheh lotfan دوباره begid?
5. Ahestetar, lotfan.
6. Misheh lotfan ahestetar tekrar konid?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
بگو	begoo	say	verb
تکرار کنید	tekrar konid	repeat	verb
میشه	mishe	is it possible	verb
آهسته	aahesteh	slowly	adjective
دوباره	dobaareh	again	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>می شه این را بلندتر بگوئید Mishe in ra bolandtar begooiid?</p> <p>"Could you please say this louder?"</p>	<p>نباید این را تکرار کنید. Nabayad in ra tekrar konid.</p> <p>"You should not repeat this."</p>
<p>میشه لطفا جاتون را به او بدهید؟ Mishe lotfan jatoon ra be oo bedahid?</p> <p>"Could you please offer your seat to her?"</p>	<p>همیشه آهسته رانندگی کنید. Hamishe aheste ranandegi konid.</p> <p>"Always drive slowly."</p>

Dobareh raftim pish doctor.

"We went to the doctor again."

GRAMMAR

There will be many times when the Persian is coming at you fast and furious, and you may not catch all or any of it. When this happens, asking the speaker to say it again, can make the difference between understanding a crucial piece of information, and spending the rest of the day trying to figure out what it was. These phrases will not only give you a better sense of the language, but will also help you tune your ear!

In Persian, "Repeat , please" is:

Lotfan tekrar konid.

We've studied the first word before, it is *lotfan* meaning "please."

Then comes the verb *tekrar konid*, which means "repeat."

If you want to address someone formally, just add the word *mishe*, which means "is it possible" or "can you" at the beginning.

1. *Mishe lotfan tekrar konid?*
"Can you repeat that, please?"

You can also ask casually "Can you say that again?":

Misheh dobareh begid?

The first word, *misheh*, means "Can you?"

Next we have *dobareh*, which means "again."

After this comes *begid*, meaning "say."

To make it a bit more formal: "Could you please say that again?"-we can add the word *lotfan*, or "please," after *mishe*, to make it more polite and formal.

Misheh lotfan dobareh begid?

At times, you may not understand the speaker even after a repeat. This is often due to how fast the person is speaking. In these cases, you can say "Slower, please":

Ahestetar, lotfan.

The first word, *ahestetar*, means "more slowly."

The second word, *lotfan*, means "please."

We can use the phrases we've seen so far together.

"Can you repeat that slowly, please?" is:

Misheh lotfan ahestetar tekrar konid?

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Asking someone to repeat what they've just said is especially important when you're given directions to get you where you're going. If you happen to be lost, instead of stopping someone on the street for directions, it's always best to stop in a store or a café and ask the people who work there. They are usually much more familiar with the neighborhood than the average passerby on the street is. If Iranian people assume you already speak the language well, they might speak fast. So if there's something you didn't understand, or if you missed part of the sentence, you can say *Mishe lotfan doberesh begid?* As you've just learned, this means, "Repeat that, please?" If you want to be more polite, or if you're talking to more than one person, *Mishe lotfan ahestetar tekrar konid?* is a useful phrase.

Quick tip 2

There is no specific rule about where to put "please" in a Persian sentence. You can put it at the beginning or the end or sometimes even in the middle; all are grammatically OK.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #10 Apologies in Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

10

PERSIAN

1. ببخشید

2. عذر میخوام

3. مساله ای نیست

ENGLISH

1. Excuse me.
2. I am sorry.
3. No problem.

ROMANIZATION

1. Bebahshid
2. Ozr mikham.
3. Masalei nist.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
نیست	nist	is not	verb
می خوام	mikhaam	I want	verb
ببخشید	bebahshid	excuse me	verb

عذر	ozr	excuse	noun
مساله	masaleh	problem	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>او دیگر اینجا نیست. Oo digar injaa nist. "She is not here any more."</p>	<p>می خوام تابستان بروم ایران. Mikham tabestan beravam Iran. "I want to go to Iran this summer."</p>
<p>ببخشید، من باید زود برگردم. Bebakhshid, man bayad zood bargardam. "Sorry, I have to return fast."</p>	<p>عذرخواهی کردن فایده ای ندارد. Ozr khahi kardan faidei nadarad. "Saying 'excuse me' is not enough."</p>
<p>مساله ای نیست، من شما را می رسانم. Masalei nist, man shoma ra miressanam. "No problem, I will give you a ride."</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson, we'll cover phrases used for apologizing. Since you haven't quite mastered Persian, it's probably a good idea to go over the phrases for apologizing, as they'll likely come in handy.

We'll start with "Excuse me" or "Pardon me," which in Persian is **Bebakhshid**.

This expression can be used to apologize for accidentally pushing someone on the tram, but it can also precede a question you ask a stranger, much like "Excuse me." Use this when you are trying to work your way through a crowd—at the subway station, for instance—when you are trying to get someone's attention in a store, or when asking for directions.

Bebakhshid!

If you want to be even more apologetic, or if you've done something worse than just bumping into someone, you can say "I am sorry":

Ozr mikham.

The first word, *ozr*, means "apology."

The second word, *mikham*, means "I request."

To sum this section up:

Use *Bebakhshid* when you've done minor damage to someone, or want to get someone's attention.

Use *Ozr Mikham* when the damage is more significant.

If someone says one of these to you, you'll want to respond with "No problem" or "It doesn't matter." The proper response is:

Masalei nist.

Masalei is a variation of the word *masale*, which means "problem."

Nist means "not" or "there is no."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

If you want to be very polite, you might want to learn the word *Kheili*. It means "very" or "a lot." Put this word before *Bebakhshid* or *ozr mikham* to sound even more sophisticated: *Kheili bebakhshid* or *Kheili ozr mikham*. You can use these when you really feel you've done something wrong.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #11

Iranian Restaurant, Part 1: How Many People?

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

11

PERSIAN

1. چند نفر هستید؟

2. ما سه نفر هستیم

3. تنها هستم

ENGLISH

1. How many people are you?
2. We're three.
3. I am alone.

ROMANIZATION

1. Chand nafar hastid?
2. Maa se nafar hastim.
3. Tanhaa hastam.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
هستید	hastid	you are	verb
هستم	hastam	am	verb
سه	se	three, 3	numeral

چهار	chaahaar	four, 4	numeral
تنها	tanhaa	alone	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>شما هنوز اینجا هستید؟ shomaa hanooz injaa hastid? "You are still here?"</p>	<p>خیلی خسته هستم Kheili khaste hastam "I am very tired."</p>
<p>سه کیلومتر به شهر مانده. Se kilometr be shahr mande. "There remains three kilometers to the city."</p>	<p>چهار نفر وارد مغازه شدند. Chahar nafar varede maghaze shodand. "Four people entered the shop."</p>
<p>Shoma tanha hastid? "Are you alone?"</p>	<p>شما تنها هستید؟</p>

GRAMMAR

There is a wide variety of Iranian dishes, and your job as a visitor is to try as many different foods as possible! However, before you start eating, you have to get to the table! In this lesson, we'll cover getting to the table in a restaurant.

When entering a restaurant in Iran, you will be greeted with **Khosh aamadid**, which means "Welcome,"

or **Befarmaaid**, which means "come in please."

When you enter a restaurant, or *restooran* in Persian, you'll usually be seated by a waiter or waitress. Often you will be asked the question "How many people in your party?" so practicing it will come in handy at some point. "How many people are you?" in Persian is:

Chand nafar hastid?

Let's break this down. The first word, *Chand* means "How many?"

After this comes *Nafar*, which means "person."

And finally *Hastid*, which means "are you?"

So literally, it is "How many persons are you?"

Now let's go over how to answer.

You might tell the waiter or waitress,

Ma se nafar hastim.

...which in English means "We are three people."

The first word, *maa*, means "we."

And the second word, *se*, means "three."

After this comes *nafar hastim*, which is how you say, "persons we are."

Let's take a look at some of the numbers you might need here, from two to five:

2: *do*

3: *se*

4: *chahar*

5: *panj*

If you are just one person, the proper answer is "I am alone," which in Persian is:

Tanha hastam.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Eating out is one of the greatest pleasures of travelling to Iran. When you go to a *restooraan*, you'll probably be seated by a waiter or waitress. Of course, since you have learned some very useful survival phrases in this lesson, you should try to use them.

Quick tip 2

As you have seen, "restaurant" in Persian is *restooraan* (as taken from French the last *T* is dropped). There are other places in Iran too that serve food. For example, you can look for a sign that says *saandewich*, which means "sandwiches" in English. These usually serve sandwiches, salads and snacks. There are also many types of restaurants serving

international and fusion dishes. But never miss a real *chelo kabaab*, which means "rice and kebab" in Iran.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #12

Iranian Restaurant, Part 2: Reserving a Table

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

12

PERSIAN

1. میخواستم یک میز برای امشب رزرو کنم

2. برای چند نفر؟

3. برای دو نفر لطفاً

4. ساعت چند؟

5. ساعت هشت لطفاً

ENGLISH

1. I would like to make a reservation for tonight.
2. For how many people?
3. For two people, please.
4. For what time?
5. For eight o'clock, please.

ROMANIZATION

1. Mikhastam ye miz baraye emshab rezerv konam.
2. Baraye chand nafar?
3. Baraye do nafar lotfan.

CONT'D OVER

4. Saat chand?
5. Saat hasht lotfan.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
میز	miz	table	noun
رزرو	rezerv	reserve	noun
امشب	emshab	tonight	adverb
چند	chand	how many	phrase
نفر	nafar	person	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>چیزی روی میز نگذارید. Chizi rooye miz nagozarid.</p> <p>"Don't put anything on the table."</p>	<p>یک بلیط برای من رزرو کنید. Yek bilit baraye man rezerv konid.</p> <p>"Reserve one ticket for me."</p>
<p>امشب می رویم سینما. Emshab miravim cinama.</p> <p>"Tonight we go to the cinema."</p>	<p>چند روز است که به اینجا آمدید؟ Chand rooz ast ke be inja amadid?</p> <p>"How many days have you come here for?"</p>
<p>چند روز به کریسمس مانده؟ Chand rooz be Christmas mande?</p> <p>"How many days are left to Christmas?"</p>	<p>یک نفر می تونه به من کمک کنه؟ Yek nafar mitoone be man komak koneh?</p> <p>"Can a person help me?"</p>

GRAMMAR

In the last lesson, we learned how to get a table at a restaurant, but please know that because

of the popularity of Iranian food, it can be difficult to get a seat, especially at weekends. The best thing to do, without a doubt, is to make a reservation beforehand for the time you want to eat.

In this lesson, we'll cover making a reservation at a restaurant.

Normally, if you make a phone call to reserve a table for the evening, you would say "I would like to reserve a table for tonight":

Mikhastam ye miz baraye emshab rezerv konam.

The first word is *Mikhastam*, meaning "I would like to" in a polite form.

Then comes *ye miz* meaning "a table."

Next is the word *baraye*, which means "for."

Next is the word *emshab*, which means "tonight."

Now, the thing we want to do: *rezerv*, which clearly means "reservation."

Next, *konam* means "to do."

Normally, you'll be asked how many people are in your party and what time you'd like a table.

"For how many people?" - ***Baraye chand nafar?***

Now imagine you are a party of two. You'll answer in Persian, "For two people, please."

Baraye do nafar lotfan.

Finally, let's see how they will ask you the time of your reservation.

Saat chand?

Now let's answer the question! Let's imagine you want to reserve a table at eight o'clock: "At eight o'clock, please." In Persian, that's:

Saat hasht lotfan.

First we have *saat*, which means "time" or "o'clock"

Then we have *hasht*, which means "eight."

We follow this with *lotfan*, which you'll remember is "please."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Iranian people love to eat food. Alcohol is not currently served in Iranian restaurants.

Quick tip 2

Restaurants usually take orders until 10 p.m. You can stay longer, but the kitchen will probably be closed. But you can also get snacks at snack bars, which are open until late.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #13

Iranian Restaurant, Part 3: Smoking or Non-Smoking?

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

13

PERSIAN

1. ببخشید اینجا سیگار کشیدن آزاده؟

2. بله، آزاده

3. نه، آزاد نیست

4. ببخشید، اینجا سیگار کشیدن ممنوعه؟

5. بله، ممنوعه

6. نه، ممنوع نیست

ENGLISH

1. Excuse me, is smoking allowed here?
2. Yes, it is [allowed].
3. No, it isn't [allowed].
4. Excuse me, is smoking forbidden here?
5. Yes, it is.
6. No, it isn't.

ROMANIZATION

1. Bebahshid, inja sigar keshidan azadeh?

CONT'D OVER

2. Baleh, azadeh.
3. Na, azad nist.
4. Bebakhshid, inja sigar keshidan mamnooeh?
5. Baleh, mamnooeh.
6. Na, mamnoo nist.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
سیگار	sigaar	cigarette	noun
آزاده	aazaadeh	allowed	verb
اینجا	injaa	here	adverb
ممنوع	mamnoo	prohibited	verb
کشیدن	keshidan	smoking	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>من سیگار را ترک کردم. Man sigar ra tark kardam. "I quit cigarettes."</p>	<p>اینجا پارک کردن آزاده؟ Inja park kardan azadeh. "Parking is allowed here."</p>
<p>خیلی وقت است اینجا هستید؟ Kheili vaght ast inja hastid? Have you been waiting here for a long time?</p>	<p>از اینجا تا خانه ما 5 کیلومتر است. Az inja ta khanei ma 5 kilometr ast. It is five kilometers from here to our house.</p>

گردش به چپ ممنوع است. Gardesh be chap mamnoo ast. "Turning left is prohibited."	سیگار کشیدن برای سلامتی مضر است. Sigar keshidan baraye salamati mozer ast. "Smoking cigarettes is bad for your health."
---	---

GRAMMAR

In the last lesson, we learned how to make a reservation in a restaurant. Now that you know how to get a table, you have another big issue to tackle. If you want to enjoy your meal, the smoking issue is very important. If you are a smoker in a non-smoking establishment or a non-smoker in a smoking establishment, this could ruin your meal.

In this lesson, we'll cover how to ask for a smoking or non-smoking table.

Let's imagine first that you are a smoker. Before entering a restaurant, you need to ask, "Excuse me, is smoking allowed here?":

Bebakhshid, inja sigar keshidan azadeh?

Bebakhshid, as we have seen, means "Excuse me."

We follow this with *inja*, which means "here."

And then *sigar*, which means "cigarette," followed by *keshidan*, which means "smoking."

Next we have *azadeh*. This word usually means "free," but here it means "is allowed?"

The answer to this question is very simple: ***baleh, azadeh*** which means "Yes, it is allowed," or ***na, azad nist*** which means "No, it is not allowed."

If the answer is "You are not allowed to smoke here," the expression "I'm sorry" often comes before the negative answer:

Bebakhshid, mamnooeh.

Another way of asking is:

Bebakhshid, inja sigar keshidan mamnooeh?

This literally means "Excuse me, is smoking prohibited here?" You might want to ask it while pointing at specific tables or areas of the restaurant.

Inja, you'll remember, means "here."

Sigar keshidan literally means "to smoke a cigarette."

Mamnooeh means "forbidden."

The whole question is:

Bebakhshid, inja sigar keshidan mamnooeh?

On some signs, you will see the phrase *Sigar keshidan mamnoo*. This means "Smoking cigarettes is prohibited," and you'll see it beside the familiar image of a cigarette inside a red cancel sign.

Now let's go over the possible answers to that question, "Is smoking prohibited in here?" If it's a positive answer, you might hear:

Baleh mamnooeh.

All we did was add the Persian word for "yes," *baleh*, at the beginning of the sentence. Because the question has a negative meaning—we're asking whether smoking is prohibited—a "yes" answer will mean "Yes, it is prohibited":

Baleh, mamnooeh.

If what you're pointing at is a smoking table, you'll hear:

Na, inja mamnoo nist.

The first word, *na*, means "no."

The second word, *inja*, still means "here."

The third word, *mamnoo*, means "forbidden."

The fourth word, *nist*, means "is not."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Non-smoking rules are not currently being enforced so much in Iran, but smoking has begun to be banned in some places and restaurants and cafés. Many people still smoke in Iran, but the number of smoking adults is decreasing. Smoking outside in public places is allowed, and many restaurants still have no restrictions on smoking.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #14 Iranian Restaurant, Part 4: Placing an Order

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

14

PERSIAN

1. همیشه لطفاً منو را ببینم؟

2. نوشیدنی چی میل دارید؟

3. چلوکباب و دوغ لطفاً

ENGLISH

1. Can I see the menu, please?
2. What would you like to drink?
3. I would like chelo kabab and a doogh.

ROMANIZATION

1. Mishe lotfan menu ro bebinam?
2. Nooshidani chi meil darid?
3. Chelo kabab va doogh lotfan.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
منو	menu	menu	noun
نوشیدنی	nooshidani	beverage	noun
میل دارید	meil daarid	you would like	phrase

چی	chi	what	pronoun
بینم	bebinam	I see	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>منوی این رستوران خیلی خوب است. Menuye in restoran kheili khoob ast.</p> <p>"This restaurant's menu is good."</p>	<p>من نوشیدنی غیرالکلی می نوشم. Man nooshidani gheir alkoli minoosham.</p> <p>"I drink non-alcoholic beverages."</p>
<p>بستنی میل دارید؟ Bastani meil darid?</p> <p>"Would you like an ice-cream?"</p>	<p>ظهر چی می خوری؟ Zohr chi mikhori?</p> <p>"What did you eat at noon?"</p>
<p>از چی بیشتر خوشتان آمد؟ Az chi bishtar khoshetan amad?</p> <p>"What was your favorite?"</p>	<p>امیدوارم باز هم شما را بینم. Omidvaram baz ham shoma ra bebinam</p> <p>"I hope I see you again."</p>

GRAMMAR

Finally, you've got a seat at a table. Now it's time to order!

In this lesson, we'll cover how to ask for a menu and then order your food and drinks.

Normally you have to catch the waiter's attention, perhaps by raising your right hand a bit. Then you'll ask for a menu:

Mishe lotfan menu ro bebinam?

"Can I see the menu please?"

Mishe, means "is it possible," a polite form

Lotfan, you will remember, means "please."

Menu ro, unsurprisingly, means "the menu."

Bebinam means "can see."

Because Iranian meals are so unique and diverse, you might have a hard time choosing something from the menu. Some restaurants offer the main traditional meal but some are more varied and offer Iranian and foreign dishes.

On the menu you'll generally find *pish ghaza* meaning "starters," and *ghazaye asli* meaning "main courses," followed by *deser* meaning "desserts," and *nooshidani* meaning "drinks."

In 99% of cases, the waiter or waitress will begin by asking what you'd like to drink:

Nooshidani chi meil darid?

Nooshidani, you may recall, means "drink."

Chi means "what."

Meil darid means "you desire."

Now let's look at some typical beverages in restaurants:

doogh ("yogurt and water")

kola ("cola")

Maolshair ("alcohol-free beer")

Once you have looked at the menu, you can finally call the waiter for the order.

When you order in Iran, you can just say the name of the dish you want and add *lotfan*, which means "please." If you want to order more than one item, you can connect them with **va**, which means "and."

Now let's look at some good dishes you can find on a typical Persian menu. These are relatively common, and you won't want to miss them on your journey in Iran.

Chelo kabab ("kebab and rice")

Baghali polo ("mixed rice with herbs and beans")

So if you want to order *chelo kabab* and a *doogh* to drink, you should say to the waiter

Chelo kabab va doogh lotfan.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

You've probably noticed that Persian dishes are quite heavy in meat. You are right, but don't think this results in a boring cuisine. The meat can be prepared in many different ways, and it makes for a variety of delicious dishes.

Quick tip 2

If an Iranian person takes you out to dinner, they probably won't let you pay, but don't worry—accept it. They like to feel hospitable.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #15 Iranian Restaurant, Part 5: Asking for the Check

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

15

PERSIAN

1. چیز دیگه ای میل دارید؟

2. نه، متشکرم

3. چایی، قهوه میل دارید؟

4. حساب، لطفاً

ENGLISH

1. Would you like anything else?
2. No, thank you.
3. Would you like to have a tea or coffee?
4. The check, please.

ROMANIZATION

1. Chize digeii meil darid?
2. Na, moteshakkeram.
3. Chaii ya ghahve meil darid?
4. Soorathesaab, lotfan.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
چیز	chiz	thing	noun
چای	chaaii	tea	noun
قهوه	ghahveh	coffee	noun
حساب	hesaab	bill	noun
دیگه	dige	else	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>چیزی لازم ندارید؟</p> <p>Chizi lazem darid?</p> <p>"Do you need anything?"</p>	<p>من بعد از غذا چای می نوشم.</p> <p>Man bad az Ghaza chaii minoosham.</p> <p>"I drink tea after lunch."</p>
<p>صبح ها همیشه قهوه می نوشم.</p> <p>Sobh haa hamisheh ghahve minoosham.</p> <p>"In the morning, I drink coffee."</p>	<p>اجازه بدهید من حساب را پرداخت کنم.</p> <p>Ejaze bedahid man hesab ra pardakht konam.</p> <p>"Allow me to pay the bill."</p>
<p>Nooshabe digari meil nadarid?</p> <p>"Do you want another beverage?"</p>	<p>نوشابه دیگری میل ندارید؟</p>

GRAMMAR

In the last lesson, we learned how to get a waiter's attention and order food and drinks at a restaurant. Once you have the beverages and entrées you ordered, you can enjoy the mouthwatering meal.

Normally, when the waiter sees that you have finished, he or she will come to your table and kindly ask, "Would you like anything else?" In Persian this is **Chize digeii meil darid?**

Here *digeii* means "else" and *Chize* means "something," So *chize digeii* altogether means "anything else."

Meil darid means "Would you like."

You are sure to hear this from waiters in restaurants or cafés.

Unless you're still hungry-which is very unlikely after a Persian meal-you can say "No, thanks": ***Na, moteshakkeram.***

You may recall that *na* means "no" and *moteshakkeram* means "thanks."

In some restaurants in Iran, the waiters ask if you want coffee or tea at the end of the meal. No doubt you'll hear ***Chaii ya ghahve meil darid?***

Which means something like: "Would you like to have a tea or coffee?"

Chaii means "tea."

Next is *ya*, which is the Persian word for "or"

Then, we have the noun *Ghahve*, the Persian word for "coffee."

Then again we have *Meil darid* which means "Would you like."

If you prefer coffee, answer *Ghahve, lotfan.*

Or if you want tea, say *Chaii, lotfan.*

When you're ready to leave, you'll want to ask for the check. In Persian this is ***Soorathesaab, lotfan.***

The first word, *soorathesab*, means "the bill."

And by now you're no stranger to *lotfan* ("please").

And now you're ready to go!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Iranian people do usually leave tips. If you are especially happy with your meal and service, you can leave a big tip, and it will certainly be appreciated by the staff. Leaving a tip is rather a must and can be as little as 1 to 2 percent of the bill.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #16

Counting 0-10 in Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

16

PERSIAN

1. یک نفر

2. دو نفر

3. دو شیشه شربت، لطفاً

4. یک پاکت آجیل، لطفاً

ENGLISH

1. One person.
2. Two people.
3. Two bottles of syrup, please.
4. A package of Persian nuts, please.

ROMANIZATION

1. Yek nafar.
2. Do nafar.
3. Do shishe sharbat, lotfan.
4. Yek pakat ajil, lotfan.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
شیشه	shishe	bottle	noun
شربت	sharbat	syrup	noun
شش	shesh	six (6)	numeral
هفت	haft	seven (7)	numeral
هشت	hasht	eight (8)	numeral

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>یک شیشه نوشابه لطفاً. Yek shishe nooshabeh lotfan. "A bottle of beverage, please."</p>	<p>باید شربت سینه بخوری. Bayad sharbate sineh bokhori. "You must have cough syrup."</p>
<p>شش نفر از دوستانم آمدند. Shesh nafar az doostanam amadand. "Six of my friends came along."</p>	<p>هفت خودرو با هم تصادف کردند. Haft khodroo ba ham tasadof kardand. "Seven vehicles crashed into each other."</p>
<p>هشت بار تلفن کردم. Hasht bar telefon kardam. "I called eight times."</p>	

GRAMMAR

This lesson is very straightforward—we're going to cover counting zero through ten. So let's jump right in!

0 *Sefr*

1 *yek*

2 *do*

3 *se*

4 *chahar*

5 *panj*

6 *shesh*

7 *haft*

8 *hasht*

9 *noh*

10 *dah*

When you count things, the number comes first, followed by the thing. For example, "one person" is

Yek nafar

"Two people" would be:

Do nafar

As you may have noticed, the noun doesn't change when there's more than one of it, as it would in English.

"Five people" is:

Panj nafar

Numbers can be very useful, especially when shopping in Iran.

Imagine you are buying some presents to bring back to your country. You've chosen two bottles of syrup in a nice shop.

"Two bottles of syrup, please."

Do shishe sharbat, lotfan.

Do, as you already know, means "two."

Shishe means "bottle."

And *sharbat*, means "syrup."

I'm sure you don't need reminding that *lotfan* is "please"

Now imagine you want to buy some Persian nuts.

"A package of Persian nuts, please" is:

Yek pakat ajil, lotfan.

Yek, as we've seen plenty of times by now, means "one."

Pakat means "package."

And *ajil* means "Persian nuts."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Good Iranian souvenirs include *baklava* and *ajil* (nuts). Baklava is a rich sweet pastry made of layers of filo pastry filled with chopped nuts and sweetened with syrup and honey. It's a speciality of the cuisines of older dynasties and is sold in many supermarkets and patisseries.

Ajil, is very popular in Iran and is known worldwide and comes in a huge variety of mixtures. There are sweet nuts and salty ones, and they can consist of tens of different sorts of nuts.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #17

Counting to 100 in Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 7 Cultural Insight

17

PERSIAN

1. ساعت یازدهه

2. ساعت یازده و نیمه

3. سیزده عدد بد شانسیه

4. یک ماه سی روز دارد

5. من صد یورو در جیبم دارم

ENGLISH

1. It's 11 o'clock.
2. It's half past eleven.
3. Thirteen is an unlucky number.
4. One month has thirty days.
5. I have a hundred euros in my pocket.

ROMANIZATION

1. Saat yazdahe.
2. Saat yazdaho nim.
3. Sizdah adade bad shansieh.

CONT'D OVER

4. Yek mah si rooz darad.
5. Man sad euro dar jibam daram.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
یازده	yaazdah	eleven	noun
بیست	bist	twenty	noun
بد شانسی	bad chansi	bad luck	adverb
هفده	hefdah	seventeen	noun
سیزده	sizdah	thirteen	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>تا محل شما یازده مایل فاصله است. Ta mahale shoma yazdah mayl fasele ast.</p> <p>"It is eleven miles to your neighborhood."</p>	<p>در امتحان نمره بیست گرفت. Dar emtehan nomre bist gereft.</p> <p>"He got twenty mark in his exams."</p>
<p>دونده المپیک در مسابقه بدشانسی آورد. Davande olampic dar mosabeghe bad chansi avard.</p> <p>"The Olympic athlete had bad luck in the match. "</p>	<p>دختر او هفده سال دارد. Dokhtare oo hefdah sal darad.</p> <p>"His daughter is seventeen years old."</p>
<p>بعضی ها عدد سیزده را خوش شانس می دانند. Baziha adade sizdah ra khosh chansi midanand.</p> <p>"Some people regard the number thirteen as good luck."</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson we're going to continue with counting as we cover the numbers 11-100.

Let's just quickly review 0-10.

0 *sefr*

1 *yek*

2 *do*

3 *se*

4 *chahar*

5 *panj*

6 *shesh*

7 *haft*

8 *hasht*

9 *noh*

10 *dah*

In Persian, counting from 11-20 is like putting one, two, three, ... in front of *dah* which means "ten."

11 *yazdah*

12 *davazdah*

13 *sizdah*

14 *chahardah*

15 *panzdah*

16 *shanzdah*

17 *hefdah*

18 *hejdah*

19 *noozdah*

20 *bist*

You probably noticed that to make numbers 11-19, you just put a version of the number before the word *dah*, which means "ten." Now, the numbers 21-29 start with *bist*, which means "twenty." For example, 21 is *bisto yek*, which literally means "twenty and one."

Let's make some sample sentences with these numbers. We can use them to talk about time.

"It's eleven o'clock" in Persian is:

Saat yazdah ast.

Saat means "time" or "watch."

And we just learned that *yaazdah* is "eleven" and *ast* means "is" at the end.

.

We can use the same type of sentence to express any time, so let's try some more sentences.

Saat yazdaho nim.

"It's half past eleven."

nim means half.

And the rest of the sentence we have already learned.

Here's another sentence:

"Thirteen is an unlucky number."

Sizdah adade bad shansieh.

sizdah is "thirteen."

The next word, *adade*, means "number."

The next word is *bad*, and it simply means "bad." And the *chansieh* at the end means "is evil," or "is bad luck," which connects to bad:

Altogether, we have:

Sizdah adade bad shansieh.

Let's try a bigger number:

Yek mah si rooz darad.

"One month has thirty days."

Mah means "month," so *yek mah* means "one month."

Rooz means "day." As you can guess, *si rooz* means "thirty days."

The last word, *darad*, means "has."

So now that you've just learned "30," let's go through some other Persian word for the rest of the tens:

30 *si*

40 *chehel*

50 *panjah*

60 *shast*

70 *haftad*

80 *hashtad*

90 *navad*

Let's try making the Persian word for "fifty-three." "Fifty" is *panjah* and "three" is *se*. You may remember in Persian we added "and" in between to make "fifty and three." Putting them together, we have *panjaho se* or "fifty-three."

Finally, we have *sad*, which is "hundred."

100 *sad*

Let's use *sad* to say "I have a hundred euros in my pocket":

Man sad euro dar jibam daram.

Jibam means "my pocket."

We just learned that *sad* means "hundred."

The next word, *euro*, means "euro."

Finally, *daram* means "have" and *man* means "I." So *man daram* means "I have."

To count up from *sad*, we just need to add the units and the tens we have already learned, and always add "and," which appears as an *o* at the end of the previous word.

110 *sado dah*

198 *sado navado hasht*

(slow) *sa - do na - va - do hasht*

sado navado hasht

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Shopping in Iran can be a great experience, and you can enhance that experience by learning how to say numbers and start bargaining. For example, if you want to shop for clothes but have no idea how to tell the clerks your size, studying this lesson will have helped you buy that jumper you saw in the window.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #18

How Much? in Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

18

PERSIAN

1. این چنده؟

2. این کت چنده؟

3. قیمت چنده؟

4. قیمت این کت چنده؟

ENGLISH

1. How much is this?
2. How much is this coat?
3. How much is the price?
4. What is price of this coat?

ROMANIZATION

1. In chandeh?
2. In cot chandeh?
3. Gheymat chandeh?
4. Gheymate in cot chandeh?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
چنده	chandeh	how much is	phrase
قیمت	gheymat	price	noun
کت	cot	coat	noun
این چنده	in chandeh	how much is this?	phrase
قیمت چنده	gheymat chandeh	what is the price?	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>این هلوها کیلویی چنده؟ In holou ha kilouii chandeh?</p> <p>"How much are the peaches per kilo?"</p>	<p>قیمت این پالتو چنده؟ Gheymate in palto chandeh?</p> <p>"What is the price of this overcoat?"</p>
<p>برای خودتان کت خریدید؟ Baraye khodetan cot kharidid?</p> <p>"Did you buy yourself a coat?"</p>	<p>این چنده؟ In chandeh?</p> <p>"How much is this?"</p>
<p>Gheymate in angoorha chandeh?</p> <p>"What is the price of these grapes?"</p>	<p>قیمت این انگورها چنده؟</p>

GRAMMAR

Now it's time for some useful Survival Phrases for when you have time to shop in Iranian stores.

You should remember that *Bebakhshid* or *Ozr mikham*, both meaning "Excuse me," is the first thing to say to a shop clerk. After that you should say, "How much is this?" In Persian, that's

In chandeh?

in, as we've seen before, means "this."

Chandeh? means "is how much?."

Imagine that you find a clothing stand in a local market and want to buy a coat. After saying *Bebakhshid* or *Ozr mikham* to get the shopkeeper's attention, you can ask:

Bebakhshid, in cot chandeh?

First comes *in* which means "this."

After this comes the word *cot* meaning "coat."

We already know *chandeh?* which means "is how much?."

The last construction of this lesson is another common way to ask the price in Persian:

Gheymat chandeh?

Gheymat means "price."

Chandeh again means "is how much."

So *Gheymat chandeh?* literally means "How much is the price?"

Gheymate in cot chandeh? means "What is price of this coat?"

First we have *gheymat* which is the "price" and then *in* which, as we've seen, is "this." Next is *cot*, or "coat" and the word *chandeh*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Let's have a look at some possible purchases that might interest you and how to say them in Persian:

shalvar - "trousers"

kafsh - "shoes"

bolooz - "blouse"

kif - "bag"

daman - "skirt"

Now get out there and enjoy your shopping!

Quick tip 2

Nowadays Iranian supermarkets accept bank cards, which are usually debit cards. Of course it's good to have some cash in the local currency. Iranian money is called Rial. When changing money, you can go to either a bank or a smaller exchange office called *sarafi*.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #19

Bargaining in Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

19

PERSIAN

1. میشه ارزونتر بدین؟

2. اوو ، خیلی گرونه

3. چند میخاین؟

4. من ده تومن میدم

ENGLISH

1. Can I get it for cheaper?
2. Oh, it's too expensive!
3. How much do you want?
4. I'll give you ten toman.

ROMANIZATION

1. Misheh arzoontar bedin
2. Ooo, kheili gerooneh!
3. Chand mikhain?
4. Man dah toman midam.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
ارزون تر	arzoontar	cheaper	adjective
ریال	riaal	rial	noun
گرونه	gerooneh	expensive	adjective
چند	chand	how many	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>اجاره این آپارتمان از همه ارزوتتره. Ejare in apartman az hame arzoontare</p> <p>"The rent of this apartment is cheaper than all the rest."</p>	<p>برای این کار باید 1000 ریال پردازید. Baraye in kar bayad 1000 rial bepardazid.</p> <p>"You have to pay 1000 rials for this job."</p>
<p>آناناس اینجا خیلی گرونه. Ananas inja khili gerooneh.</p> <p>"Pineapple is very expensive here."</p>	<p>چند روز است که به اینجا آمدید؟ Chand rooz ast ke be inja amadid?</p> <p>"How many days have you come here for?"</p>
<p>چند روز به کریسمس مانده؟ Chand rooz be Christmas mande?</p> <p>"How many days are left to Christmas?"</p>	

GRAMMAR

In Iran, bargaining is a very common thing. Especially because you are a tourist, you'll get things much cheaper if you can bargain for them. The only places you can't haggle are big shopping centers, and stores that sell items with price tags. However, small clothing stores and open markets are up for bargaining. Flea markets are called *jome bazar* in Iran.

Normally, if you are interested in buying something, you say, "Excuse me, how much is this?"

Bebakhshid gheymate in chandeh?

As soon as they tell you the price, you can start bargaining to lower it. Don't be shy, ask "Could I get it for cheaper?":

Misheh arzoontar bedin?

The first word, *mishe*, you already know, means "is it possible?"

The second word, *arzoontar*, means "cheaper."

The third word, *bedin*, means "give."

Another way to express the feeling that something is too expensive and you want to start haggling is with:

Ooo, kheili gerooneh!

"Oh, it's too expensive!"

Kheili here means "very."

And *geroon* means "expensive"; with an *e* at the this means "is expensive."

From this point the vendor will begin to haggle, and the result is in your hands! The first thing the vendor might say now is:

Chand mikhain?

which means "How much do you want [to pay]?"

Chand means "how much."

Mikhain means "you want."

You can ask the vendor:

"What's your lowest price?"

Kamtarin gheymat shoma chandeh?

The first word, *kamtarin*, mean "the least, the lowest."

The next word, *gheymat*, you will remember is "price."

The next word, *shoma*, means "your."

Bargaining is very common in Iran, so it's normal to ask the price over and over again until the vendor drops the price to the one you want.

Now imagine that you are at a *jome bazar*. You want to buy a bag, but not at the merchant's price, let's say that's 15 tooman; you'd rather suggest your own price, let's say 10 tooman.

After *Kamtarin gheymat shoma chandeh?* which means "What's your lowest price?," you might say:

Man dah

Dah toman means "ten toman," of course.

And *midam* means "I will give."

When haggling, this is all you need to get your point across. If the merchant refuses you, slowly walk away, and in 90% of cases they will give in.

Bashe dah toman bedeh.

This means "OK, give ten toman."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

We've already talked a bit about money, numbers, and buying stuff. Let's talk about prices a bit. Prices in Iran are lower than in Western Europe and North America. Here's a list of what to expect:

Restaurant: 50,000 - 350,000 Rials per person

A pair of jeans: 800,000 - 1,200,000 Rials

A cup of coffee: 25,000 Rials

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #20

Iranian Money: An Introduction

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

20

PERSIAN

1. دوازده تومن

2. دویست و سی تومن

3. پنج هزار و سیصد و بیست

ENGLISH

1. 12 tooman.
2. 230 tooman.
3. 5320 tooman.

ROMANIZATION

1. Davazdah toman.
2. Devisdo si toman.
3. Panj hezaro sisado bist.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
تومان	toman	toman	noun
هزار	hezaar	one thousand (1000)	numeral
سیصد	sisad	three hundred (300)	numeral

دویست و سی	devisto si	two hundred thirty	numeral
پنج هزار و سیصد و بیست	panj hezaro sisado bist	five thousand three hundred and twenty	numeral

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>این حداقل 20 هزار تومانه. In hade aghal 20 hezar tomane.</p> <p>"This is at least twenty thousand Tomans."</p>	<p>باید برای این کار 1000 دلار خرج کنید. Baraye in kar bayad 1000 dollar kharj konid.</p> <p>"You have to spend 1000 dollars for this task."</p>
<p>از تهران تا چالوس 300 کیلومتر است. Az Tehran ta Chalus sesad kilometre.</p> <p>It is three hundred kilometers from Tehran to Chalus.</p>	<p>من دویست و سی تومان به او بدهکار هستم. Man devisto si toman be oo bedehkar hastam.</p> <p>"I owe him two hundred and thirty Tomans"</p>
<p>مسافت این دو شهر 5320 کیلومتر است. Masafateh in do shahr panj hezaro sisado bist kilometr ast.</p> <p>"The distance between these two cities is 5320 kilometers."</p>	

GRAMMAR

Iran's currency is officially the *rial*. But the people usually use a more friendly version which is *toman*. You would rarely hear anyone speaking about rial. *Toman* is one tenth of *rial*; so 100 *rials* equals 10 *tomans*. In banks and official price listing like tags, and bank notes you will see *rial*. At the time of writing, the exchange rate is roughly 27,000 rials to 1 USD. The monetary system in Iran is going to change in the near future, so make sure you have the latest when you want to travel.

Let's say some prices in Persian—it won't be too difficult. Let's start with 12 toman:

Davazdah toman

Now let's go up to hundreds or thousands.

We've already learned that a hundred in Persian is *sad*.

And 200 in Persian is *devisd*

What about "230"? In Persian we say:

Devisdo si

When you go above 200, the noun *sad* re-appears and stays in the same form with the number added to its beginning:

sad

So 300 is *sisad*, 400 is *chaharsad*, and so on.

A thousand in Persian is

hezar

For 2000 or more of something, the noun *hezar* stays in the same form.

So 2000 would be *do hezar*. Remember to add the *o* which means "and" when you want to add the number to it.

Now for a slightly more complicated number, "5320":

Panj hezaro sisado bist

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

On Iranian coins and bills you will see the picture of a person who is very important in Iranian history. He is Ayatollah Khomeini, a cleric who is the founder of the Islamic Republic of Iran. If you visit Iran, you will not see his picture not only on money, but in just about every place you visit.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #21

Using the Internet in Iran

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

21

PERSIAN

1. ببخشید، اینترنت ساعتی چنده؟

2. ساعتی پنج هزار تومان است.

3. نیم ساعتی دو هزار و پانصد تومان است.

ENGLISH

1. Excuse me, how much is the internet for one hour?

2. One hour is five thousand tomans.

3. Half an hour is two thousand five hundred tomans.

ROMANIZATION

1. Bebahshid, internet saa'ati chandeh?

2. Saa'ati panj hezaar toomaan ast.

3. Nim saa'ati do hezaar o paansad toomaan ast.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
ساعتی	saa'ati	hourly	adverb
نیم	nim	half	adverb
پانصد	paansad	five hundred (500)	numeral

پنج	panj	five (5)	numeral
دو	do	two (2)	numeral

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>کرایه دوچرخه ساعتی 2000 تومان است.</p> <p>Keraye docharkhe saa'ati 2000 toman ast.</p> <p>Bicycle hire fee is an hourly rate of 2000 tomans.</p>	<p>تا نیم ساعت دیگر می رسم.</p> <p>Ta nim saat digar miressam.</p> <p>I will be there in half an hour.</p>
<p>پانصد تومان عیدی گرفتم.</p> <p>Pansad toman eidi gereftam.</p> <p>I got five hundred Tomans as my New Year gift.</p>	<p>از مغازه پنج تا دفتر خریدم.</p> <p>az maghazeh panj ta daftar kharidam.</p> <p>I bought five notebooks from the store.</p>
<p>باید تا ساعت پنج شروع کنیم.</p> <p>Bayad ta saat panj shorou konim.</p> <p>We have to start by five o'clock.</p>	<p>من برای برنامه امشب دو تا بلیط دارم.</p> <p>Man baraye barname emshab do ta bilit daram.</p> <p>I got two tickets for tonight's show.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson we'll learn about a place crucial to your travels in this modern age: the Internet café! Normally, you find Internet cafés in the big main cities. These days it is very hard to find areas without Internet in Iran; the minimum level of service is a common computer near the front desk. In hotels and cafés, wifi is usually part of the service. But if you don't carry your laptop around, this lesson is for you.

Imagine you're at the reception counter and want to ask how much the connection costs for how long.

Bebakhshid, saati chandeh?

Bebakhshid is "Excuse me."

Saati means "per hour," "for one hour."

And *chande* is still "how much."

The answer will probably sound something like this:

Saati panj hezar tomane.

"One hour is five thousand tomans."

But it is also quite common for cafés to charge in 30-minute blocks, so you may hear:

Nim saati do hezaro pansad tomane.

Nim means "half."

So this sentence means "Half an hour is two thousand five hundred tomans."

Nim saati do hezaro pansad tomane.

If you're still a little shaky on Persian numbers, you can review those lessons anytime.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

In Iran, you can call an Internet café by the same name but the other way round, *café Internet*, and in Persian the word for café, *kafe*, might also show up. You may find some Internet cafés with a free access to the Internet, sometimes with a time limit for one user. Many places have a wireless Internet connection that is free for everybody, so if you have your own laptop it will be very easy to connect to the Internet.

Quick tip 2

Iranian domain names end in *.ir*. There are restrictions on what sites you are allowed to visit in Iran.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #22

Riding the Iranian Bus, Part 1: Getting a Ticket

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

22

PERSIAN

1. یک بلیت لطفاً

2. یک بلیت چنده؟

3. یک بلیت اتوبوس، لطفاً

ENGLISH

1. One ticket, please.
2. How much is a ticket?
3. One bus ticket please!

ROMANIZATION

1. Yek bilit, lotfan.
2. Yek bilit chandeh?
3. Yek bilit otobus, lotfan.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
بلیط	bilit	ticket	noun
یک	yek	one (1)	numeral
اتوبوس	otoboos	bus	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

بلیط هواپیما گران شده است. Bilit havapyma geroon shod. "The price of airline tickets has risen."	یک بار دیگر باید این فیلم را ببینم. Yek bare digar bayad in film ro bebinam. "I have to see this film one more time."
Man ba otobus miayam. "I will come by bus."	من با اتوبوس می آیم.

GRAMMAR

The bus is an important means of transportation but not so widely used in all Iranian cities. However, before starting your trip, you probably need to buy a ticket. For local commuting in Iran, the fare is around 100 tomans. You may purchase tickets at the little kiosks near bus stations (*dake bilit foroushi*). Upon getting on the bus, you must show or give your ticket to the driver.

Let's imagine you are in Tehran, since it's easiest to buy tickets there—all stops inside the city, regardless of distance, cost the same. The sentence for "one ticket, please" will be:

Yek bilit, lotfan.

First we have *yek* ("one").

Next comes *bilit*, meaning "ticket."

Don't forget to add *lotfan* for "please" at the end!

Before you buy a ticket, you'll want to know how much it costs.

Yek bilit chandeh?

In case you're not travelling in Tehran, you might want to be more specific and ask for a "bus ticket":

Yek bilit otobus, lotfan.

All we did was add *otobus*, the Persian word for "bus," before *bilit*.

"A bus ticket, please."

Yek bilit otobus, lotfan.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Buses and a few metro lines have frequent service all day in Tehran. Bus services and the metro work up to midnight. After this hour you may want to use taxis from car agencies, which are quite popular in Tehran.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #23

Riding the Iranian Bus, Part 2: Long Distance Trips

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

23

PERSIAN

1. یک بلیت برای اصفهان، لطفاً
2. تا اصفهان چند ساعت راه است؟
3. هفت ساعت
4. حدود هفت ساعت

ENGLISH

1. One ticket to Esfahan, please.
2. How many hours does it take to Esfahan?
3. Seven hours.
4. Approximately seven hours.

ROMANIZATION

1. Yek bilit baraye Esfahan, lotfan.
2. Ta Esfahan chand saat rah ast?
3. Haft saat.
4. Hodoode haft saat.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
کیلومتر	kilometr	kilometer	noun
تا	ta	to	preposition
اصفهان	Eсфаahan	Esfahan	noun
حدود	hodood	about	preposition

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>چند کیلومتر دیگر راه باقی است؟ Chand kilometr digar rah baghist?</p> <p>"How many kilometers remain?"</p>	<p>از اینجا تا مرکز شهر چقدر فاصله است؟ Az inja ta markaze shahr cheghadr faseele ast?</p> <p>"What distance is it from here to the city center?"</p>
<p>اصفهان شهر تاریخی ایران است. Esfahan shahr tarikhi Iran ast.</p> <p>"Esfahan is the historical city of Iran."</p>	<p>شما حدود چه ساعتی می رسید؟ Shoma dodoode che saati miresid?</p> <p>"About when are you going to arrive?"</p>

GRAMMAR

In the previous lesson, we covered how to get bus tickets in cities. You may also want to move between cities, and the Iranian convenient coach service is perfect for that.

The phrase you use for that will be:

["One ticket for" followed by the Destination name.] **Yek bilit baraye, destination name, lotfan.**

We've already covered all those words except *baraye* to means "for."

Yek bilit baraye Mashad, lotfan.

Yek bilit baraye Esfahan, lotfan.

Yek bilit baraye Shiraz, lotfan.

Let's imagine now that you are in Tehran and you want to go to Esfahan, the historical capital

of Iran. Before you commit yourself to a ticket, you want to know how much it costs. What would you ask the bus driver?

Bilit Esfahan chandeh?

"How much is a ticket to Esfahan?"

Imagine that you are visiting for the first time, with no idea how far apart your favorite destinations are, so you want to ask the bus driver how long the ride will be.

"How long will it be until we get to Esfahan?"

Ta Esfahan chand saat rah ast?

Ta means "up to."

Esfahan is the city of "Esfahan."

Chand saat means "how many hours."

Rah ast means "is distance."

One answer you could hear is *Haft saat*. This means "seven hours"—but I'm sure that by now you're all familiar with numbers in Persian.

Haft saat.

You might also hear *Haft saat rahe* ("The way takes seven hours").

If you want to say "approximately," just add *hodoode* after *saat*, which you'll remember means "hour":

Hodoode haft saat rahe.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Buses used to be very popular in Iran. However, because Iran is a vast country, bussing across it takes a long time. Nowadays, plane travel is becoming enormously popular. Instead of spending nine hours on a bus, you can reach your destination in half an hour. Of course, flight prices are more expensive than bus fares.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #24

Riding the Iranian Bus, Part 3: What Is the Next Stop?

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

24

PERSIAN

1. این اتوبوس به اصفهان میره؟

2. توقف بعدی کجاست؟

3. توقف بعدی اصفهان است.

ENGLISH

1. Does this bus go to Esfahan?

2. What is the next stop?

3. The next stop is Esfahan.

ROMANIZATION

1. In otobus be Esfahan mire?

2. Tavaghof badi kojast?

3. Tavaghof badi Esfahan ast.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
به	be	to	preposition
است	ast	is	verb
بعدی	baedi	next one	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>کی به خانه شما بیایم؟ Kay be khaneh shoma biayam?</p> <p>"When shall I come to your house?"</p>	<p>الان به نظرم دیر است. Alan ne nazaram dir ast.</p> <p>"I think now is too late."</p>
<p>با اتوبوس بعدی می رویم. Ba otobuse badi miravim.</p> <p>"We will get the next one."</p>	<p>قطار در این ایستگاه توقف نمی کند. Ghatar dar in istgah tavaghof nemikonad.</p> <p>"The train will not stop at this station."</p>

GRAMMAR

In the previous lesson, we learned how to ask how long the bus trip to your destination will take.

You'll probably want to know where your bus is going before you get on it. Or you may find yourself wondering whether the bus you're already on will stop where you hope it will. Either way, you'll want to be able to ask "Does this bus go to ... ?":

In otobus be [Destination] mire?

Just fill in the blank with whatever place you're going to. Let's try with Iran's big tourist destination, Esfahan.

In otobus be Esfahan mire?

The first word is *in*, which we know means "this."

Next comes *otobus*, obviously "bus."

Then the place where you want to go, in this case Esfahan. Before this comes the word *be* which means "to."

The word after that, *mire*, means "goes."

Put it all together, and we get:

In otobus be Esfahan mire?

"Does this bus go to Esfahan?"

You may also want to ask what the next stop is:

Tavaghof badi kojast?

Tavaghof means "stop."

Badi means "next."

Kojast means "where is."

As an answer, you might get:

Tavaghof badi Esfahan ast.

Get ready to hop off if you hear this, for it means:

"The next stop is Esfahan."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

If you don't know how to get somewhere, the easiest way to find out is to ask a bus driver. For example, *Chetori beram Esfahan?* means "How do I get to Esfahan?" This phrase is useful whether you're totally lost or just need to find a certain place.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #25

Riding the Iranian Subway

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

25

PERSIAN

1. یک بلیت لطفاً

2. ببخشید، برای رفتن به امام خمینی کدام خط رو سوار بشم؟

3. مسیر کهریزک

ENGLISH

1. A ticket, please.
2. Excuse me, what line do I need to take for Levent?
3. Kahrizak direction.

ROMANIZATION

1. Yek bilit lotfan.
2. Bebahshid, baraye raftan be Imam Khomeini kodam khat ro saver besham?
3. Masir Kahrizak.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
رفتن	raftan	go	verb
خط	khat	line	noun
کدام	kodaam	which	pronoun

سوار	savaar	take	verb
مسیر	masir	path	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>از این مسیر رفتن مشکل تر است. Az in masir raftan moshkeltar ast.</p> <p>"It is harder to go by this path."</p>	<p>خط 52 را می گیرم. Khate 52 ra migiram.</p> <p>"I will take line 52."</p>
<p>باید از کدام طرف برویم؟ Bayad az kodam taraf beravim?</p> <p>"Which direction should we take?"</p>	<p>سوار قایق شدم و رفتم. سوار قایق شدم و رفتم. Savar ghayegh shodam va raftam.</p> <p>"I take the boat and go."</p>
<p>این مسیر بسته است. In masir baste ast.</p> <p>"This path is closed."</p>	

GRAMMAR

Now let's get ourselves a subway ticket. As you may remember from previous lessons, we can ask for a ticket by saying

Bebakhshid, yek bilit lotfan.

This is the same sentence we learned in lesson 22.

Bebakhshid means "Excuse me."

Yek bilit means "a ticket."

And *lotfan* means "please."

Our location in this lesson will be Tehran. Imagine you're going from Mirdamad - a main subway station - to Imam Khomeini, which is near the big Bazaar in Tehran. You want to know what line will get you there.

You can find out by asking, "Excuse me, what line do I need to use to get to Imam Khomeini?".

Bebakhshid, baraye raftan be Imam Khomeini kodam khat ro savaar besham?

First comes the usual *Bebakhshid*.

Then comes *baraye raftan*, which means "for going" or "in order to go."

Next is *be Imam Khomeini* meaning "to Imam Khomeini".

After that comes *kodam* meaning "which".

Then it's *khatro* meaning "the line".

Last is *savaar besham*, which means "Shall I ride", "shall I take".

One possible answer is *Masir Kahrizak*.

"Kahrizak direction."

This may sound unhelpful, but in Tehran there are currently only two lines, perpendicular to each other. So if you are in Mirdamad station, this means you are already on one of these lines! So you probably won't need to ask which one to take, but only the direction.

The first word is *Masir*, meaning "Pathway, direction."

And the second is *Kahrizak*, which is the south ending station of the line you are in.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Subways usually operate until around midnight. After that, you have to take a car or taxi.

Quick tip 2

There are only two subway lines in Tehran called Metro. One is the North-South line, which intersects the other line, which is in West-East direction.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #26

Riding the Iranian Train: Long-Distance Trips, Part 2

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

26

PERSIAN

1. دو بلیت برای تهران لطفاً

2. رفت و برگشت یا یکسره؟

3. فقط یکسره؟

ENGLISH

1. Two train tickets to Tehran, please.
2. One-way or return?
3. Only one way.

ROMANIZATION

1. Do bilit baraye Tehran, lotfan.
2. Rafto bargasht ya yek sare?
3. Faghat yek sare.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
یا	yaa	or	preposition
یک سره	yek sare	one way	adverb
رفت	raft	single	adjective

برگشت	bargasht	return	adverb
فقط	faghat	only	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>از گل سرخ بیشتر خوشت می آید یا لاله؟ Az gole sorkh bishtar khoshet miad ya laleh?</p> <p>"Do you prefer roses or tulips?"</p>	<p>بلیط یک سره گفتم برای آمستردام. Bilit yek sare gereftam baraye Amesterdam.</p> <p>"I got a one way ticket to Amsterdam."</p>
<p>یک بلیط رفت برای من بگیر لطفا. Yek bilit raft baraye man begir, lotfan.</p> <p>"Please get a single ticket for me."</p>	<p>من بلیط برگشت ندارم. Man bilit bargasht nadaram.</p> <p>"I don't have a return ticket."</p>

من این را فقط به تو گفتم.
Man in ra faghat be to goftam.

"I have only told you about this."

GRAMMAR

You'll ask for *ghatar* tickets at a ticket office. The phrase for this is

Yek bilit baraye Destination, lotfan.

Your destination goes in the middle of the sentence.

As for that destination, let's use the capital city, Tehran for this example.

"One train ticket to Tehran, please" in Persian is

Yek bilit baraye Tehran, lotfan.

You remember this pattern from our lesson on long-distance coaches, right?

Imagine you are travelling not on your own but with someone else, so you need to ask for two or more tickets.

"Two train tickets to Tehran, please," is

Do bilit baraye Tehran, lotfan.

As you can see, it's very easy to understand. Because it's two tickets instead of one, you just replace *yek* meaning "one" with *do* meaning "two".

If you use these exact words, the attendant will either assume you want a one-way ticket, or ask you whether you want a return ticket, which in Persian is *Rafto bargasht*

The question you'll most often be asked is

Rafto bargasht ya yek sare?

"Return or one-way?"

The first word, *raft*, means "going." The *o* at the end means "and": *rafto*.

The next word, *bargasht*, means "return."

If we use those two words together, *Rafto bargasht*, means "going and returning"-in other words, a return trip.

In the middle of the sentence is *ya*, meaning

"or." That tells us we're about to see an alternative option.

Then we have *yek*, which you already know means "one."

And finally *sare*, meaning "way, direction."

Put *yek* and *sare* together and we get "one way."

Note that while this sentence spells out both your options, you may just be asked

Rafto bargasht?

If you don't plan on coming back, you can answer

Faghat yek sare.

Faghat means "only", and *yek sare* is "one way", as you saw.

If you want a return ticket, you can say "Yes, going and returning."

Bale, rafto bargasht.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

In Iran, you can buy train tickets at the stations' ticket office. Be sure to buy your ticket before you board, since it's not possible to get one on the train, and if you ride without a ticket, you'll have to pay a fine.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #27

Riding the Iranian Train— Long-Distance Trips

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

27

PERSIAN

1. بلیت درجه یک برای شیراز، لطفاً

2. بلیت درجه دو برای شیراز، لطفاً

3. بلیت کوپه برای شیراز، لطفاً

ENGLISH

1. A first-class ticket to Shiraz, please.
2. A second-class ticket to Shiraz, please.
3. A sleeper ticket to Shiraz, please.

ROMANIZATION

1. Bilit daraje yek baraye Shiraz, lotfan.
2. Bilit daraje do baraye Shiraz, lotfan.
3. Bilite coupe baraye Shiraz, lotfan.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
شیراز	Shiraz	Shiraz	noun
درجه یک	daraje yek	first class	adjective
درجه دو	daraje do	second class	adjective

کوپه	coupeh	cabin	noun
لطفا	loftan	please	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>شیراز شهر شعر است. Shiraz shahr sher ast. "Shiraz is the city of poetry."</p>	<p>قیمت بلیط درجه یک دو برابر قیمت بلیط معمولی است. Gheymate bilit daraje yek do barabare gheymate bilit mamooli ast. "The price of a first class ticket is twice the normal ticket."</p>
<p>من همیشه بلیط قطار درجه دو می گیرم. Man hamishe bilit ghatar daraje do migiram. "I always buy second class train tickets."</p>	<p>یک کوپه بگیریم که با هم باشیم. Yek coupe begirim ke ba ham bashim. "Get a cabin so we can be together."</p>
<p>لطفا مرا کمک کنید. Lotfan mara komak konid. "Please help me."</p>	<p>می توانید لطفا میز را کنار بنزید؟ Mitavaanid lotfan miz ra کنار bezanid? "Could you please put the table aside."</p>

GRAMMAR

Normally in Iran, you can choose between **daraje yek** meaning "first class", and **daraje do** meaning "second class").

Yek, as you remember, means "one, first."

And *daraje* is "grade, class."

In the second phrase, *do* means "two, second."

Once again, those are *daraje yek* and *daraje do*.

.

Imagine you want to buy a first-class ticket. The destination this time will be Shiraz.

"A first-class ticket to Shiraz, please," in Persian is

Bilit daraje yek baraye Shiraz, lotfan.

We saw this structure in the previous lesson. All we've done this time is customize the ticket with *daraje yek* meaning "first-class".

If you want to buy a second-class ticket, you just change *yek* meaning "first" to *do* meaning "second":

Bilit daraje do baraye Shiraz, lotfan.

.

In Iran, some long-distance trains offer a bed option, normally in a cabin which is called *coupe*. These tickets cost more than regular ones, but if you'd like to have a good sleep on the way to your destination, you should get one of these.

The sentence for this is

Bilite coupe baraye Shiraz, lotfan.

"A sleeper ticket to Shiraz, please."

Coupe means "cabin," *coupe (slow)*, *coupe*

bilit is a "ticket." With an *e* at the end it means "ticket for"

Altogether these words refer to a ticket for a cabin ticket that has sleeping facilities.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

The cheapest option is a second-class regular train ticket. These don't guarantee that you're going to have a seat but the cars are usually clean. A first-class ticket on a regular train is somewhat better, but still not the best. If you get a sleeper ticket, you will have your own cabin, but if you are alone, you might have to share it with some other people.

Quick tip 2

If you feel like visiting Iran's neighbour countries, you can catch a train from Tehran railway station. You can go to Istanbul in Turkey or Jolfa in Azerbaijan. Just remember that some countries require you to have a visa.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #28

Taking a Taxi in Iran

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

28

PERSIAN

1. میدان انقلاب؟

2. میدان انقلاب میرید؟

3. همینجا لطفاً

4. اینجا پیاده می‌شم، لطفاً

5. چند میشه؟

ENGLISH

1. Enghelab Square?
2. Will you go to Enghelab Square?
3. Here, please.
4. I will get off here, please.
5. How much is it?

ROMANIZATION

1. Meydane Enghela?
2. Meydane Enghelab mirid?
3. Haminja lotfan.

CONT'D OVER

4. Inja piadeh misham, lotfan.
5. Chand mishe?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
همین جا	hamin jaa	right here	phrase
میدان	meydaan	square	noun
اینجا	injaa	here	adverb
پیاده	piaadeh	get off	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>لطفا همین جا بایستید. Lotfan hamin ja beistid. "Please wait right here."</p>	<p>من بعد از میدان پیاده می شوم. Man bad az meydan piadeh mishavam. "I will get off after the square."</p>
<p>خیلی وقت است اینجا هستید؟ Kheili vaght ast inja hastid? Have you been waiting here for a long time?</p>	<p>از اینجا تا خانه ما 5 کیلومتر است. Az inja ta khanei ma 5 kilometr ast. It is five kilometers from here to our house.</p>
<p>وقتی از قطار پیاده شدید به من خبر بدهید. Vaghti az ghatar piadeh shodid be man khabar bedahid. "Tell me when you get off the train."</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you'll learn how to get to places by taxi.

Imagine you want to go to Enghelab Square, an important place in Tehran, near the university.

In Persian, "Enghelab Square" is *Meydane Enghelab*.

You just name the destination in a questioning tone, as if you are asking "can you take me to Enghelab Square?" You would say it like this:

Meydane Enghelab?

This is the simplest, easiest way to say where you want to go.

Of course, it's good to have more than one option!

You can also say "Will you go to Enghelab Square?" *Meydane Enghelab mirid?*

The first word, *Meydane*, means "square."

This is followed by *Enghelab*, which is the name. Literally, it means "revolution").

Mirid, again is "will you go?"

When you want to get off, you can say "Here, please." ***Haminja, lotfan.***

Just say these words and the driver will stop.

Haminja means "right here."

It could also be nice to add "thank you" after the driver stops: *Mamnoon*

If you want to be really specific about it, you can say

Inja piadeh misham, lotfan.

which means "I will get off here, please."

Inja means "here."

Piadeh misham means "I will get off."

When it's time to pay, you may want to know how much you have to pay. ***Chand mishe?*** "How much is it?"

The first words, *chand*, means "How much" as you may remember.

Next add *Mishe*, which means "is it."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

It's easy to spot a taxi in Iran: They're orange and recently, green and have signs on top that say "TAXI" or تاکسی. You can wave to flag down a moving taxi; you can also call taxi agencies to request a taxi, which in this case are more expensive. You can find an empty cab at nearly every major intersection in every major town.

Quick tip 2

Fares in Iran are not expensive for normal taxis but high for taxis called from agencies. In Tehran, they start at 3,000 tomans and can go up to 15,000 tomans when it comes to longer distances or agency cars. The drivers don't expect a tip.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #29

Where Can I Find This in Persian?

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

29

PERSIAN

1. کجا میتونم یک ... پیدا کنم؟
2. کجا میتونم یک کافه پیدا کنم؟
3. ببخشید، کجا میتونم یک رستوران پیدا کنم؟
4. ببخشید، کجا میتونم یک کتابفروشی پیدا کنم؟

ENGLISH

1. Where can I find a...?
2. Where can I find a café?
3. Excuse me, where I can find a restaurant?
4. Excuse me, where I can find a bookshop?

ROMANIZATION

1. Koja mitoonam yek ... peida konam?
2. Koja mitoonam yek cafe peida konam?
3. Bebahshid, koja mitoonam yek restoran peida konam?"
4. Bebahshid, koja mitoonam yek ketabforushi peida konam?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
می تونم	mitoonam	can I	verb
پیدا	peidaa	find	verb
کتاب فروشی	ketaabforushi	bookstore	noun
رستوران	restooraan	restaurant	noun
کجاست	kojaast	where	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>می تونم بپرسم این کت را از کجا خریده اید؟</p> <p>Mitoonam beporsam in cot ra az koja kharideid?</p> <p>Can I ask you where did you buy your coat?</p>	<p>نمی توانم چیزی را که می خواهم پیدا کنم.</p> <p>Nemitavanam chizi ro ke mikhamam peida konam.</p> <p>"I can't find what I want."</p>
<p>به کتاب فروشی نزدیک خانه رفتم.</p> <p>Be ketabforushi nazdik khaneh raftam.</p> <p>"I went to the bookshop near my home."</p>	<p>ظهر در رستوران غذا خوردیم.</p> <p>Zohr dar restaurant ghaza khordim.</p> <p>"We ate in the restaurant at noon."</p>
<p>از کجا آمده اید؟</p> <p>Az koja amadeid?</p> <p>"Where do you come from?"</p>	<p>مغازه طلافروشی کجاست؟</p> <p>Maghaaze talaa foroushi kojaast?</p> <p>"Where is the jewelry shop?"</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson we'll introduce you to a phrase that will help you track down whatever you need.

"Where can I find...?" in Persian is

Koja mitoonam yek ... peida konam?

The first word, *koja*, means "where."

Next is *mitoonam* which is "can I."

Next is *yek* meaning "one."

Then comes the thing you want to find.

The last two words, *peida konam*, means "can I find."

All together that's

Let's look for some things you might need when travelling abroad. Imagine you're walking around in Tehran in the summer, and want something to drink.

"Excuse me, where can I find a cafe?" in Persian is

Bebakhshid, koja mitoonam yek cafe peida konam?

Do you see the structure we just learned?

koja mitoonam yek ... peida konam?

What if you are hungry and want to eat? Now you need a restaurant, which is *restoran* in Persian. You should ask:

Bebakhshid, koja mitoonam yek restoran peida konam?

(slow) *Be - bakh - shid, ko - ja mi - too - nam yek res - to - ran pei - da ko - nam?*

Bebakhshid, koja mitoonam yek restoran peida konam?

With this structure, you can find anything you are looking for.

To ask about any other item, we can just replace *cafe* or *restoran* with the thing we're looking for, and the phrase works brilliantly! And let's do it in an even more polite form.

Let's try it with "bookstore," which in Persian is.

(slow) *ke - tab - fo - ru - shi.*

ketabforushi

"Excuse me, where can I find a bookshop?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Here are some other things you might be looking for. Just stick these words in the sentence pattern from this lesson.

"cinema"	<i>cinama</i>
"supermarket"	<i>supermarket</i>
"post office"	<i>baje post</i>
"hospital"	<i>bimarestan</i>
"pharmacy"	<i>darookhaneh</i>

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #30

Where Can I Find This Place in Persian?

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

30

PERSIAN

1. اینجاها داروخانه هست؟

2. این نزدیکیها خودپرداز هست؟

ENGLISH

1. Is there a pharmacy nearby?

2. Is there an ATM near here?

ROMANIZATION

1. Injaha darookhaneh hast?

2. In nazdikiha khodpardaz hast?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
داروخانه	daarookhaaneh	pharmacy	noun
خودپرداز	khodpardaaz	cash machine	noun
اینجاها	injaaha	around here	adverb
نزدیک	nazdik	nearby	adverb
هست	hast	is	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>این دارو را باید از داروخانه بخری. In daroo ra bayad az darookhaneh bekhari.</p> <p>"You have to obtain this medication from the pharmacy."</p>	<p>از خود پرداز پول گرفتم. Az khodpardaz pool gereftam.</p> <p>I got money from the ATM.</p>
<p>هر وقت از اینجا رد شدی بیا پهلوی ما. Har vaght az injaha rad shodi bia pahlooye ma.</p> <p>"Come to us whenever you are around here."</p>	<p>خانه ما همین نزدیک هاست. Khaneh ma hamin nazdik hast.</p> <p>Our house is nearby.</p>
<p>Hanooz ham baraye sabte nam vaght hast.</p> <p>"There is still time for registration."</p>	<p>هنوز هم برای ثبت نام وقت هست.</p>

GRAMMAR

First, we need a place. Let's use the word *darookhaneh*, which means "pharmacy."

In Persian, "Is there a pharmacy around here?" is

Injaha darookhaneh hast?

The first word, *injaha*, means "around here."

Next comes *darookhaneh* which means "pharmacy."

After that comes *hast*, which means "is."

All together, it's

Injaha darookhaneh hast?

Instead of *injaha* meaning "around here," you can also say *in nazdikiha* meaning "near here, nearby":

In nazdikiha darookhaneh hast?

"Is there a pharmacy nearby?"

In nazdikiha darookhaneh hast?

To ask for a different place, we can replace the word *darookhaneh* with any other word, and the phrase works just fine.

Imagine that you need to withdraw some money from your bank account.

In Persian, "Is there an ATM near here?" is

Injaha khodpardaz hast?

The only thing that changes is the thing you are looking for, in this case *khodpardaz*. The first part of the word, *khod*, means "self," and *pardaz* means "paying." So literally "self-paying, cash machine."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

There are no special sign for pharmacies in Iran. You have to spot them among other stores.

Quick tip 2

Iran is not connected to the worldwide credit card system, so you cannot use your international credit cards with cash machines in Iran. You have to obtain debit or cash cards from banks to use with such machines.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #31

Asking Directions in Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 3 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

31

PERSIAN

1. مستقیم برید

2. مستقیم برو

3. بپیچید به چپ

4. بپیچ چپ

5. بپیچید به راست

6. بپیچ راست

7. سر چراغ راهنمایی بپیچ راست

8. سمت راست

9. سمت چپ

ENGLISH

1. Go straight. (polite)
2. Go straight. (casual)
3. Turn left. (polite)
4. Turn left. (casual)
5. Turn right. (polite)

CONT'D OVER

6. Turn right. (casual)
7. Turn right at the traffic light.
8. On the right.
9. On the left.

ROMANIZATION

1. Mostaghim berid.
2. Mostaghim boro.
3. Bepichid be chap.
4. Bepich chap.
5. Bepichid be rast.
6. Bepich rast.
7. Sare cheragh rahnamaii bepich rast.
8. Samte rast.
9. Samte chap.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
----------------	---------------------	----------------	--------------

مستقیم	mostaghim	straight	adjective
چپ	chap	left	noun
راست	rast	right	adverb
پیچ	bepich	turn	verb
سمت	samt	on the	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>از سر چهارراه مستقیم بروید. Az sare chahar rah mostaghim beavid.</p> <p>"Go straight after the traffic light."</p>	<p>احزاب چپ در انتخابات پیروز شدند. Ahzabe chap dar entekhabat pirouz shodand.</p> <p>"Left wing parties won the elections."</p>
<p>مدرسه در کوچه سمت راست است. Madrese dar khouche samte chap ast.</p> <p>"The school is in the street to the right."</p>	<p>بعد از چراغ پیچ به راست. Bad az cheragh bepich be chap.</p> <p>"Turn right after the light."</p>
<p>خانه ما سمت راست خیابان است. Khane ma samte rast khiaban ast.</p> <p>"Our house is on the right side of the street."</p>	

GRAMMAR

In Persian, "go straight" is

Mostaghim boro.

The first word, *mostaghim*, means "straight."

And the second word, *boro*, means "go."

Together, they make:

mostaghim boro.

If you want to say this more politely, you can change the ending a little:

mostaghim berid.

Here's how to tell someone to turn left.

Bepich chap.

The first word, *bepich*, means "turn."

The second word, *chap*, means "left."

Together, they make

Bepich chap.

If you want to make this more polite, you can say

Bepichid be chap.

The word *be* here means "to"; so in the polite form we say turning "to the left".

Now for the opposite. "Turn right" in Persian is

Bepich rast.

As you've probably figured out, *rast* means "right."

And the polite form of this phrase is:

Bepichid be rast.

In real life, of course, you'll need to know *where* to turn left or right.

Here's "Turn right at the traffic light":

Sare cheragh-e rahnamaii bepich rast.

Let's break it down:

cheragh-e rahnamaii means "traffic light." In this sentence, we added *sare* which means "at" so: *Sare cheragh-e rahnamaii*, "at the traffic light."

Then we have *bepich rast*, which we know means "turn right."

All together, it's: *Sare cheragh-e rahnamaii bepich rast.*

To say this more politely, we can use the polite version of "turn to the right" that we learned before.

Sare cheragh-e rahnamaii bepichid be rast.

Here's how to say "on the right":

samte rast

And "on the left" is

samte chap

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Knowing how to ask for directions is very useful. However, your best bet is to get a map so that you don't get too lost. Drop into a store and ask *Naghshe darid?* ("Do you have a map?"), and you'll never be lost again!

Quick tip 2

Once you have mastered right and left in Persian, knowing the words for the cardinal directions could come in handy:

"north" - *shomal*

"east" - *shargh*

"south" - *jonoob*

"west" - *gharb*

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #32

Can You Take My Picture in Persian?

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

32

PERSIAN

1. میتونید از ما عکس بگیرید؟

2. از ما عکس میگیرید؟

3. یک عکس از من میگیرید؟

4. یک عکس از من میگیری؟

5. میشه یک عکس بگیرید؟

ENGLISH

1. "Can you take our picture?" (formal)
2. "Can you take our picture?" (informal)
3. "Can you take my picture?" (formal)
4. "Can you take my picture?" (informal)
5. "Can you take a picture?" (formal)

ROMANIZATION

1. Mitoonid az ma aks begirid?
2. Az ma aks migirid?
3. Yek aks az man migirid?

CONT'D OVER

4. Yek aks az man migiri?
5. Mishe yek aks begirid?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
عکس	aks	photo	noun
می گیرید	migirid	get	verb
می گیری	migiri	would you take	verb
من	man	I, me	pronoun
ما	maa	we	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>از من عکس نگیر. Az man aks nagir.</p> <p>"Don't take photos of me."</p>	<p>برای من بلیط می گیرید؟ Baraye man bilit migiri?</p> <p>"Could you get the ticket for me?"</p>
<p>یک عکس از من می گیری؟ Yek aks az man migiri?</p> <p>"Would you take a photo of me?"</p>	<p>از من عکس نگیر. Az man aks nagir.</p> <p>"Don't take photos of me."</p>
<p>من تا حالا چنین چیزی ندیدم. Man ta hala chenin chizi nadidam.</p> <p>I have never seen such a thing.</p>	<p>ما سال گذشته رفتیم اروپا. Ma sale gozashte raftim oroupa.</p> <p>"We went to Europe last year."</p>

GRAMMAR

In Persian, "Can you take our picture?" is

Mitoonid az ma aks begirid?

The first word, *mitoonid*, means "can you."

The next word, *az*, means "from" followed by *ma* which means "we, us."

The next word, *aks*, means "photo" in Persian. (slowly) *aks*

aks

And the last word, *begirid*, means "take."

All together, that's

If you just want to ask someone to take a picture-not of anything in particular-that question is

Mishe yek aks begirid?

"Can you take a picture?"

If you are on your own and you want to ask someone to take your picture, you'll ask

Yek aks az man migirid?

Az man means "from me."

Yek aks az man migirid?

If the person you're asking is younger than you and there's no need to be polite, here's how you'd ask to have your picture taken:

Yek aks az man migiri?

Just change migirid to migiri.

And if you want to ask a young person to take a picture of your whole group.

Yek aks az ma migiri?

Just change man to ma, that is "me" to "us."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

It is always polite to wave for permission before taking someone else's photo, just like in every country. Also, if do ask someone to take your picture, pop an *Ozr mikham* there in the beginning. I'm sure you remember that this word means "Excuse me."

Quick tip 2

You can get cameras and digital equipment pretty much everywhere in Iran. Try to be prepared, don't let the battery die on you, and remember that Iran has round pins for the plugs and 220 volts.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #33

May I Take Your Picture? in Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

33

PERSIAN

1. میتونم یک عکس از شما بگیرم؟

2. عکس بگیرم ازت؟

3. اینجا اجازه عکاسی دارم؟

ENGLISH

1. Can I take your picture? (formal)
2. Can I take your picture? (informal)
3. Can I take a picture here?

ROMANIZATION

1. Mitoonam yek aks az shoma begiram?
2. Aks begiram azat?
3. Inja ejaze daram aks begiram?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
ازت	azat	from you	pronoun
بگیرم	begiram	I get	verb
اجازه	ejaaze	permission	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>من ازت انتظار نداشتم. Man azat entezar nadashtam.</p> <p>"I didn't expect this from you."</p>	<p>می روم کتم را بگیرم. Mirabam cotam ra begiram.</p> <p>"I am going to get my coat."</p>
<p>اجازه دارم از شما عکس بگیریم؟ Ejaze daram az shoma aks begiram?</p> <p>"Do I have your permission to take a photo of you?"</p>	<p>من دو تا دوربین دارم. Man do ta dourbin daram.</p> <p>"I have two cameras."</p>

GRAMMAR

In the last lesson we learned how to ask someone to take your picture:

Mitoonid az ma aks begirid?

But what if you want to take someone else's picture? Iranian people are certainly interesting enough! "Can I take your picture?" in Persian is

Mitoonam yek aks az shoma begiram?

The first word, *mitoonam*, means "can I", which together with the last word *begiram*, "take", means "can I take?"

Next comes *yek aks*, which as you saw means "one picture."

Next comes *az shoma*, which means "from you."

The whole request is

Mitoonam yek aks az shoma begiram?

.

In situations that don't call for politeness, such as if you're asking to take a young person's photo, you can ask

Aks begiram azat?

Here *azat* is the familiar form of saying *az to* "from you."

That more casual question was

Aks begiram azat?

.

Other situations where you'll need permission to snap are museums, art galleries, and shops.

"Am I allowed to take a picture here?" in Persian is

Inja ejaze daram aks begiram?

The first word, *inja*, means "in this place."

The second word, *ejaze*, means "permission" followed by *daram*, which means "have I." So the two words together mean "have I the permission?"

And *aks* which means "picture"

So the whole request is

Inja ejaze daram aks begiram?

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

A unique place for picture-taking is the mountains on the north of the capital Tehran. Other destinations should include *Esfahan*, the historical city in the middle part of Iran.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #34

How Do You Say This in Persian?

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

34

PERSIAN

1. به فارسی به " " چی میگن؟

2. به فارسی اینو چی میگن؟

3. به فارسی اونو چی میگن؟

4. به فارسی به " " چی میگن؟

ENGLISH

1. How do you say bread in Persian?
2. How do you say this in Persian?
3. How do you say that in Persian?
4. How do you say "Happy birthday" in Persian?

ROMANIZATION

1. Be Farsi be "bread" chi migan?
2. Be Farsi ino chi migan?
3. Be Farsi oono chi migan?
4. Be Farsi be 'happy birthday' chi migan?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
می گین	migin	you say	verb
اونو	oono	that one	adverb
به فارسی	be Faarsi	in Persian	phrase
اینو	ino	this one	adverb
چی	chi	what	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>چطوری می گین "خراب"؟ Chetori migan "kharab"?</p> <p>"How do you say 'defective'?"</p>	<p>اونو بگذار روی میز. Oono begzar rooya miz.</p> <p>"Put that one on the table."</p>
<p>آن ها به فارسی حرف می زنند. Anha be Farsi harf mizanand.</p> <p>"They speak in Persian."</p>	<p>اینو برای من نگه دار. Ino baraye man negah dar.</p> <p>"Keep this one for me."</p>
<p>ظهر چی می خوری؟ Zohr chi mikhori?</p> <p>"What did you eat at noon?"</p>	<p>از چی بیشتر خوشتان آمد؟ Az chi bishtar khoshetan amad?</p> <p>"What was your favorite?"</p>

GRAMMAR

Be Farsi be "bread" chi migan?

The first two words, *be Farsi*, mean, "in Persian."

This is followed by *be bread*, "to bread."

After that comes *chi migan*, meaning "what do you say?" (the Persian is actually "what do *they* say.")

Altogether, we have

Be Farsi be "bread" chi migan?

Literally, this means, "In Persian, what do they say to bread?"

Not to leave you hanging: "bread" in Persian is *nan*.

You can also use this expression without using any English. To accomplish this, you can use the expression "How do you say this in Persian?" In Persian, the word "this" is *ino*.

So in Persian "How do you say this in Persian?" is

Be Farsi ino chi migan?

The structure is exactly the same as the previous sentence, except that in place of "bread," we have the demonstrative adjective *ino*.

All together, we have *Be Farsi ino chi migan?*

This is a phrase you can use while pointing at something.

Simply substitute the word *ino* with *oono* meaning "that" to ask, "How do you say that in Persian?"

You will have

Be Farsi oono chi migan?

But wait, it's your Iranian friend's birthday and you want to wish him or her a happy birthday- but you don't know how to say it. Let's try to ask:

Be Farsi be 'happy birthday' chi migan?

"How do you say happy birthday in Persian?"

Then you have *'happy birthday'* the phrase you want to ask, and *chi migan* follows that phrase which means 'what do you say?'.
All together:

Be Farsi be 'happy birthday' chi migan?

"Happy birthday," by the way, is *tavalodet mobarak* in Persian.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip

The Iranian traditional dessert baklava can make a great gift for someone. In Iranian tradition, people buy baklava as a present when they are going to visit someone in their home, visiting someone who is sick, or for important events such as celebrations, birthdays or weddings.

Quick tip 2

If you want to buy baklava, you should visit local bakeries or stores that sells only desserts. You are welcome to test them if you want be sure that they are fresh. Just use the sentence *Mitoonam bechesham?* which means "can I taste it?" Ninety percent of the sellers will serve you a piece and say *befarma!*, "There you go!"

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #35

Learn to Write in Persian without Lifting a Pen

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

35

PERSIAN

1. همیشه بنویسید، لطفا؟
2. همیشه اینجا بنویسید، لطفا؟
3. این را چطوری میخوانید؟
4. مداد و کاغذ دارید، لطفا؟

ENGLISH

1. Can you write it down, please?
2. Could you write it down in here, please?
3. How do you pronounce this?
4. Do you have a pen and paper?

ROMANIZATION

1. Mishe benevisisd, lotfan?
2. Mishe inja benevisisd, lotfan?
3. In ra chetori mikhanid?
4. Medad va kaghaz darid, lotfan?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
بنویسید	benevisid	Please write	verb
چطور	Chetor	how	adverb
می خوانید	mikhanid	you read	verb
مداد	medaad	pencil	noun
کاغذ	kaaghaz	paper	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>اسمتان را روی کاغذ بنویسید. Esmetan ra rooya kaghaz benevisid.</p> <p>"Write your name on the paper."</p>	<p>چطوری توانستید از این راه بروید؟ Chetori tavanestid az in rah beravid?</p> <p>How did you go by this way?</p>
<p>چطوری بروم میدان انقلاب؟ Chetori beravam meydae Enghelab?</p> <p>How can I go to Enghelab Square?</p>	<p>این درس را چگونه می خوانید؟ In dars ra chegooneh mikhanid?</p> <p>"How do you read this lesson?"</p>
<p>الان چه کتابی را می خوانید؟ Alan che ketabi ra mikhanid?</p> <p>"Which book are you reading now?"</p>	<p>با مداد بنویسید. Ba medad benevisid.</p> <p>Write with a pencil.</p>
<p>کاغذ را پاره نکنید. Kaghaz ra pareh nakonid.</p> <p>"Don't tear the paper."</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson, you'll learn how to ask someone to write something down for you.

Mishe benevisid, lotfan?

The first word, *Mishe*, means "is it possible?," or "can you."

Next we have *benevisid*, which is "write down" or "write it down."

lotfan is "please," as you can remember from previous lessons.

All together:

Mishe benevisid, lotfan?

Literally, this means, "Is it possible that you write it down, please?"

Next, we have another way to express the same meaning.

Mishe inja benevisid, lotfan?

"Could you write it down in here please?"

The only extra thing in this sentence is the word *inja* which is "in here" in English.

Once you have the written words mastered, you may find that you have no idea how to pronounce them. In Persian, "How do you pronounce this?" is:

In ra chetori mikhanid?

The first word, *in*, means "this." You should all be familiar with this by now. The *ra* is a connection word.

Next we have *chetori*, which means "how."

Finally, you have *mikhanid* which means "pronounce." Literally this means "you read it."

It could be that you're not carrying a piece of paper or a pen. So before asking

Medad o kaghaz darid, lotfan?

try asking

Medad o kaghaz darid, lotfan?

"Do you have a pen and paper?"

The first word, *Medad*, means "pen" or "pencil."

Then you have *o*, which in English is the conversational version "and."

Then you have *kaghaz* meaning "paper."

and finally *darid lotfan?* meaning "have you, please?"

Here's the whole sentence:

As usual, before asking about someone else's stationery supplies, it's a good idea to say "excuse me": *Ozr mikham* at the beginning of the sentence.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Persian writing can be very complicated as it uses a non-Roman alphabet. Sometimes writing Persian with the Roman alphabet (called *Romanization*) may help. For this purpose, you have to ask the person who is writing for you to use *Pinglish*, or *Finglish* style. These expressions are used in Persian to describe the Romanization of Persian words and stand for P (ersian) (E) inglish.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #36

Read Persian Instantly! No Knowledge of Persian Required

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

36

PERSIAN

1. این را چطور میخوانید؟

2. این را چه طور تلفظ می کنید؟

3. این را چگونه می گویند؟

4. معنیش چیه؟

ENGLISH

1. How do you read this?
2. How do you pronounce this?
3. How do you say this?
4. What does it mean?

ROMANIZATION

1. Inra chetori mikhanid?
2. Inra chetor talafoz mikonid?
3. Inra chegooneh migooiid?
4. Manish chieh?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
معنیش	maenish	its meaning	phrase
تلفظ	talaffoz	pronounce	verb
چگونه	chegooneh	how	noun
می گوئید	migooid	you say	verb
می خوانید	mikhanid	you read	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>من معنیش را متوجه نمی شوم. Man manish ra motevajeh nemishavam.</p> <p>"I don't understand its meaning."</p>	<p>من نمی توانم آن را تلفظ کنم. Man nemitavanam anra talafoz konam.</p> <p>"I cannot pronounce it."</p>
<p>چگونه می توانید چنین چیزی بگوئید؟ Chegooneh mitavanid chenin chizi begooid?</p> <p>"How can you say such a thing?"</p>	<p>آنچه می گوئید درست است. Anche migooiid dorost ast.</p> <p>What you say is right.</p>
<p>این درس را چگونه می خوانید؟ In dars ra chegooneh mikhanid?</p> <p>"How do you read this lesson?"</p>	<p>الان چه کتابی را می خوانید؟ Alan che ketabi ra mikhanid?</p> <p>"Which book are you reading now?"</p>

GRAMMAR

In Persian, "How do you read this?" is

In raa chetor mikhaanid?

The first word, *in raa*, means "this one."

Next we have *chetor*, which is "how" in English. We had this word before.

Then we have the verb *mikhaanid*, meaning "you read."

If you are pointing at something—such as a book, a newspaper, or simply a street sign—you

might also like to ask, "How do you pronounce this?"

In raa chetor talaffoz mikonid?

In raa, again, means "this one."

talaffoz means "pronounce" followed by *mikonid* which is "you do."

Which is literally: "How do you pronounce this?"

Another way of asking the same question is

In raa chegoone migood?

Which means "how do you say this?" The sentence construction is somewhat different. We change the word *chetor* to *chegoone*, which is another way of saying "how," and replace "pronounce" with "say": *migood* means "you say."

In raa chegoone migood?

After you have learned the reading and the pronunciation, you will probably want to know the meaning. So why don't you try to ask,

Manish chie?

"What does it mean?"

The first word, *manish*, means "its meaning."

Next we have *chie*, meaning "what is" in English.

Altogether, we have

Manish chie?

Or, "What does it mean?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Persian is one of the oldest languages in the world. The script in Persian basically uses the Arabic alphabet, but with some modifications. There are four extra letters in the Persian alphabet as compared to Arabic.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #37

Iranian Hotel—Checking In

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

37

PERSIAN

1. یک رزرویشن به نام داشتم
2. یک رزرویشن به نام جونز داشتم
3. یک اتاق میخواستم
4. اسمتون، لطفا؟
5. چه جوری مینویسید؟

ENGLISH

1. I have a reservation under the name of someone.
2. I have a reservation under the name of Jones.
3. I would like a room.
4. Your name, please?
5. How do you write it?

ROMANIZATION

1. Yek reservasion be nam ... dashtam.
2. Yek reservasion be nam Jones dashtam.
3. Yek otagh mikhastam.

CONT'D OVER

4. Esmetoon, lotfan?
5. Chejoori menevisid?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
به نام	be naam	in the name of	noun
اتاق	otaagh	room	noun
رزرواسیون	reservaasion	reservation	noun
اسمتون	esmetoon	your name	noun
داشتم	daashtam	I had	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>این خانه به نام من است. In khane be name man ast.</p> <p>"This house is in my name."</p>	<p>خانه ما سه اتاق دارد. Khane ma se otagh darad.</p> <p>"Our house has three rooms."</p>
<p>برای بلیط هواپیما باید رزرواسیون داشته باشید. Baraye bilit havapeyma bayad reservasion dashte bashid.</p> <p>"You must have a reservation for the flight ticket."</p>	<p>اسمتون در فهرست نیست. Esmetoon dar fehrest nist.</p> <p>"Your name is not on the list."</p>
<p>من بلیط داشتم. Man bilit dashtam.</p> <p>"I had a ticket."</p>	

GRAMMAR

In Iran, when you get to a hotel and you want to check in, you can use two possible phrases. If you have already booked a room and you want to say, "I have a reservation under the name of" and your name, you say

Yek rezerveishen be naam-e ... daashtam.

Let's break it down:

The first word *yek*, as you remember, means "one." *Rezerveishen* is obviously "reservation."

Next we have *be naam-e* which means "under the name of" or "with the name of."

After this word, you should say the name under which the reservation is held.

Then we have *daashtam* which means "I had" or "I have."

All together, we have

Yek rezerveishen be naam-e... daashtam.

This means, "I have a reservation under the name of ..."

So, if your name is Jones, you would say:

Yek rezerveishen be naam-e Jones daashtam.

Or "I have a reservation under the name of Jones."

If you have not booked the room yet, the phrase "I would like a room" in Persian is

Yek otaagh mikhaastam.

Let's break it down:

The first word, *Yek* is like the word "a" or "an," as you may recall.

Otaagh means "room."

Then we have *mikhaastam*, meaning "I would like."

All together:

Yek otaagh mikhaastam.

"I would like a room."

You will most likely be asked, "Can I get your name, please?" In Persian, this is

Esmetoon, lotfan?

Let's break it down:

The first word, *Esmetoon*, is a way to say "Your name?"

And *lotfan* is "please," which we have already learned in previous lessons.

Altogether that's

"Your name, please?"

Remember, this phrase is only used in official circumstances, so don't try to start a conversation with this line in Persian. People will think you're the police.

You might also be asked, "How do you write it?" In Persian, this is

Che joori minevisid?

Let's break it down:

The first word, *che joori*, means "how."

The word after it, *minevisid*, means "you write it" which is the formal way to say this phrase.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Do you know any words that English borrowed from Persian? There are many; for example "caviar" is taken from the Persian *Khaviar*.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #38

Iranian Hotel, Part 2: I'd Like More of This, Please

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

38

PERSIAN

1. چه ساعتی اتاق را باید تحویل داد؟

2. همیشه صابون بدین، لطفا؟

ENGLISH

1. What time is checkout?
2. Can I have some soap?

ROMANIZATION

1. Che saati otagh ra bayad tahvil dad?
2. Mishe saboon bedin, lotfan?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
صابون	saaboon	soap	noun
تحویل داد	tahvil daad	deliver	verb
باید	baayad	must, have to	verb
چه ساعتی	che saati	what time	pronoun
بدین	bedin	you give	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>دست ها را باید با صابون بشوئید. Dast hara bayad ba saboon beshoooid.</p> <p>"Hands should be washed with soap."</p>	<p>کارها را تحویل دادیم. Karhara tahvil dadim.</p> <p>"We delivered on the job."</p>
<p>باید ساعت 7 آنجا باشیم. Bayad saate 7 Anja bashim.</p> <p>"We must be there at 7 o'clock."</p>	<p>چه ساعتی با اون قرار گذاشتی؟ Che saati ba oon gharar gozashti?</p> <p>"What time did you make an appointment with him?"</p>
<p>Mitoonid paltoye mano bedin?</p> <p>"Can you give me my coat please?"</p>	<p>می تونید پالتوی منو بدین؟</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson, we'll work on more phrases you might need in a hotel in Iran.

Let's start with *Che saa'ati otaagh raa baayad tahvil daad?*

Let's break it down:

The first two words, *che saa'ati*, mean "at what time" in English.

Then you have *otaagh raa*, which means "the room."

After that you have *baayad*, which is "must" or "should."

After that you have *tahvil daad*, which is "to deliver."

So, it literally means "When should the room be delivered?"

"What time is checkout?"

Let's try to ask "Can I have some soap?" This is...

Mishe saaboon bedin, lotfan?

Which literally is "Can you give me soap, please?"

Let's break it down:

The first word, *mishe*, means "is it possible," as you might remember.

The second word, *saaboon*, means "soap."

The third word, *bedin*, means "give."

And finally *lotfan*, which you already know, means "please."

All together it is...

"Can you give me soap, please?"

Here are some additional things you may ask for when you are staying in a hotel.

hole, "Towel"

mesvaak, "Toothbrush"

khamir dandaan, "Toothpaste"

shaampo, "Shampoo"

You can use these words in the sentence above by replacing the noun *saaboon* with any other item, and don't forget to add *lotfan*, the word for "please," in order to be polite at the end of the sentence.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

There are many low-budget hotels and hostels in Iran with quite high standards. If you decide to stay at a hotel, remember that you have to pay a tip. Tipping in Iran for different purposes is very common.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #39

Iranian Post Office, Part 1: Sending Letters, Postcards, and Packages Home

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

39

PERSIAN

1. میخوام این را به ایتالیا بفرستم

2. میخوام این کارت پستال را به ایتالیا بفرستم

3. میخوام این نامه را به ایتالیا بفرستم

4. میخوام این بسته را به ایتالیا بفرستم

ENGLISH

1. I would like to send this to Italy.
2. I would like to send this postcard to Italy.
3. I would like to send this letter to Italy.
4. I would like to send this package to Italy.

ROMANIZATION

1. Mikhaam in ra be Italia beferestam.
2. Mikhaaham in kaartpostaal raa be Italiaa beferestam.
3. Mikhaaham in naame ra be Italiaa beferestam.
4. Mikhaaham in baste raa be Italiaa beferestam.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
می خواهم	mikhaaham	I want	verb
ایتالیا	itaaliaa	Italy	noun
بفرستم	beferestam	I send	verb
نامه	naameh	letter	noun
کارت پوستانال	caart postaal	postal card	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>می خواهم بروم اروپا. Mikhaham beravam oroupa.</p> <p>"I want to go to Europe."</p>	<p>تا حالا به ایتالیا نرفتم. Ta hala be Italia naraftam.</p> <p>"I have never been to Italy."</p>
<p>این دارو را برای شما می فرستم. In daroo ra baraye shoma moferestam.</p> <p>"I will send you this medication."</p>	<p>حتما برای من نامه بنویس. Hatman baraye man name benevis.</p> <p>"Definitely write a letter to me."</p>
<p>Az oroupa cart postal beferest.</p> <p>"Send a postcard from Europe."</p>	<p>از اروپا کارت پوستانال بفرست.</p>

GRAMMAR

postkhaneh

In this lesson, we're going to work on getting your postcards, letters, and packages home. The expression we need to accomplish this is—"I'd like to send this to..." and then the desired destination. For this lesson, we'll use Italy.

In Persian, "I would like to send this to Italy" is

Mikhaham in ra be Italia beferestam.

Let's break it down:

The first word, *mikhaham*, means, "I want."

Next we have *in ra*, which means "this one."

Then we have *be Italia*, which means "to Italy."

Finally we have *beferstam*, which is "to send."

All together, we have *Mikhaham in ra be Italia beferestam*.

Literally, this means "I want to send this to Italy."

Let's look at the other words. We were talking about packages, letters, and postcards, so let's try to send a postcard!

"Postcard" in Persian is

kaartpostaal

"I would like to send this postcard to Italy" in Persian is

Mikhaaham in kaartpostaal raa be Italiaa beferestam.

Let's break it down:

In as you remember means "this" and *kaartpostaal* means "postcard."

Simply add *kaartpostaal* to the previous sentence to get:

Now let's try "letter," which in Persian is

"This letter" is:

By substituting this into the first sentence, we get...

"I would like to send this letter to Italy" or

Now let's try to send a package. In Persian, "I would like to send this package to Italy" is

Mikhaaham in baste raa be Italiaa beferestam.

"Package" in Persian is *baste*.

All together, we have

Now the package requires a closer look, which we'll take in the next lesson.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip

If you already have your letter or your postcards ready for sending, you don't need to look for a post office. You just need to find a mailbox or a letterbox, which in Iran you can recognize by its bright yellow color. You find them throughout neighborhoods in the cities.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #40

Iranian Post Office, Part 2: What's in This Package?

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

40

PERSIAN

1. داخل بسته چی هست؟

2. بسته حاوی چی هست؟

ENGLISH

1. What's in the package?
2. What does the package contain?

ROMANIZATION

1. Dakhele baste chi hast?
2. Baste havie chi hast?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
بسته	basteh	package	noun
داخل	daakhel	inside	preposition
حاوی	haavi	contains	verb
چی هست؟	chi hast	what is	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>بسته را گذاشتم در اتاق. Basteh ra gozashtam too otagh.</p> <p>I put the package in the room.</p>	<p>چمدان را داخل فقسه بگذارید. Chamedan ra dakhele ghafaseh begozarid.</p> <p>"Put the suitcase inside the cupboard."</p>
<p>این ماده حاوی کلسیم است. In madeh havie kalcium ast.</p> <p>"This item contains calcium."</p>	<p>تفاوت این ماشین و ماشین قبلی چی هست؟ Tafavote in mashin va mashin ghabli chi hast?</p> <p>"What is the difference between this car and the previous one?"</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson we're going to work on getting your package one step closer to its intended destination. In the previous lesson, we discussed the phrase "I would like to send this package to Italy," which was

Mikhaham in basteh ra be Italia beferestam.

Again, the location is interchangeable. We can change "Italy," which in Persian is *Italia*, to any other country.

When sending a package, though, you'll probably have to explain what's inside it. In Persian, "What's in the package?" is

Dakhele baste chi hast?

Let's break it down:

The first word *dakhele* means "inside it."

After this comes the word *baste*, which you already know means "package."

Next, we have *chi hast*, which literally means "what is?"

All together, it's

Dakhele baste chi hast?

"What's inside the package?"

If you want to be sure to name all the things you are sending correctly, English is perfectly acceptable.

Another way they can ask you "What's in the package?" is

Baste havie chi hast?

"What does the package contain?"

Let's break it down:

The first word, *baste*, means "the package."

Then you have *havie* or "contains"

Finally, you have *chi hast* again, "what is?"

All together, we have *Baste havie chi hast?*

"What does the package contain?"

Please remember that even in Iran, as in many other countries, there are some rules for things you can and cannot send. You can learn about this by visiting the Iranian post website.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip

Buying stamps in Iran is very simple. They sell normal stamps at the *postkhaneh*, and some supermarkets, so saying *tedadi tambr mikhastam, loftan*, meaning "I would like some stamps, please," is the simplest and most common way of asking for them. Remembering your numbers comes in handy here, as they will most likely ask you how many you want. It's as easy as that!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #41

A Guide to Foreign Exchange in Iran

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

41

PERSIAN

1. این نزدیکی ها بانک هست؟
2. این نزدیکی ها صرافی هست؟
3. کجا میتوانم ارز عوض کنم؟
4. پول کوچکتد دارید لطفا؟
5. لطفا خردش کنید

ENGLISH

1. Is there an exchange office near here?
2. Is there a bank near here?
3. Where can I exchange currency?
4. Smaller denominations, please.
5. Break this please.

ROMANIZATION

1. In nazdikihaa sarraafi hast?
2. In nazdikihaa baank hast?
3. Kojaa mitavaanam arz avaz konam?

CONT'D OVER

4. Pool-e koochehtar daarid lotfan?
5. Lotfan khordash konid.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
ارز	arz	foreign currency	noun
عوض کنم	avaz konam	change	verb
صرافی	sarraafi	exchange office	noun
پول	pool	money	noun
کوچک	koochak	small	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>ارز در ایران گران شده است. Arz dar Iran gerantar shodeh ast.</p> <p>"Foreign exchange is on the rise in Iran."</p>	<p>لباسم را عوض کردم و آمدم. Lebasam ra avaz kardam va amadam.</p> <p>"I changed my clothes and went."</p>
<p>برای فرستادن پول باید به صرافی بروید. Baraye ferestadan pool bayad be sarafi beravid.</p> <p>"To send money, you have to go to an exchange office."</p>	<p>به اندازه کافی پول ندارم. Be andaze kafi pool nadaram.</p> <p>"I don't have enough money."</p>
<p>حیاط این خانه کوچک است. Hayate in khaneh koochak ast.</p> <p>"The court yard of this house is small."</p>	

GRAMMAR

Exchanging money in Iran can sometimes be tricky. You can exchange money at airports, special money exchange stores, and banks. As a general rule, try to find one of the exchange offices or banks. So first things first: let's find a location that will exchange money.

First, let's review some previous phrases and patterns we've already covered.

In Persian, "Is there an exchange office near here?" is

In nazdikihaa sarraafi hast?

Now, to ask for a bank, we can just replace the word for "exchange office" with the word for "bank" and the phrase works just fine. "Is there a bank near here?" is

In nazdikihaa baank hast?

It's not very different from the exchange office sentence, and lucky for us, "bank" in Persian is *baank*.

For times when there is neither a bank nor an exchange office, you can ask, "Where can I exchange currency?" In Persian, this is:

Kojaa mitavaanam arz avaz konam?

Let's break it down:

The first word, *kojaa*, means "where."

Then we have *mitavaanam*, which in English is "can I."

Then there's *arz*, which is "foreign exchange."

Finally we have the words *avaz konam* which means "I change."

All together, we have

Kojaa mitavaanam arz avaz konam?

"Where can I exchange currency?"

Exchanging currency is pretty straightforward—you need to fill out some forms and then present the amount you want exchanged. One extremely useful phrase is "Smaller denominations, please." It's usually beneficial to have smaller amounts of currency on you, to pay for bus fare, taxi fare, and so on.

In Persian, "Smaller denominations please" is

Pool-e koochehtar daarid lotfan?

Let's break it down:

The first word, *Pool-e*, means "money" or "notes."

Next we have *koochehtar*, which means "smaller."

Then, you have *daarid*, meaning "have you."

And last of all is *lotfan*, which as you already know means "please?"

All together, we have

Poole koochehtar daarid lotfan?

In English, this literally means "Have you got smaller money notes?"

Finally, you can also use the phrase "Break this, please" to indicate you would like smaller units of the currency. In Persian, "Break this, please" is *Lotfan khordash konid*.

Lotfan khordash konid.

Let's break it down:

The first word, *lotfan*, means "please."

Then we have *khordash konid*, which means "break it."

Here's the phrase again:

Lotfan khordash konid.

"Break this, please."

Ask this when you have a big bill that you want to break.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Iranian shopkeepers don't like so much to break bills. Sometimes it's a better idea to buy something small and get your bill broken that way.

Quick tip 2

Iranian money exchange places (*sarafi*) are safe even though they might charge more for the exchange than a bank would. Check the rates first and don't forget that a commission fee will be taken from your exchange amount.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #42

Buying Prepaid Cell Phone Cards in Iran

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

42

PERSIAN

1. سیم کارت اعتباری دارید؟
2. یک کارت ده هزار تومنی لطفا.
3. یک کارت پانزده هزار تومنی لطفا.
4. تلفن عمومی این نزدیکی ها هست؟

ENGLISH

1. Do you sell prepaid cell phone cards?
2. A 10 Lira prepaid calling card, please
3. A 15 Lira prepaid calling card, please.
4. Is there a phone booth near here?

ROMANIZATION

1. Sim carte etebari darid?
2. Yek carte 10 hezar tomani, lotfan.
3. Yek carte 15 hezar tomani, lotfan.
4. Telefone omoomi in nazdikiha hast?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
تلفن عمومی	telefone omoomi	public telephone	noun
بله	bale	yes	noun
سیم کارت	sim kaart	sim card	noun
اعتباری	etebaari	credit	noun
هست	hast	is	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>این اطراف تلفن عمومی نیست. In atraf telefone omoomi nist.</p> <p>"There is no public telephone around here."</p>	<p>اگر مایل هستید کافی است بگوئید بله. Agar mayel hastid kafi ast begoooid baleh.</p> <p>If you agree, it is enough to say yes.</p>
<p>بله، حتما با من تماس بگیر. Bale, hatman ba man tamas begir.</p> <p>Yes, please do contact me.</p>	<p>از کجا سیم کارت بخرم؟ Az koja sim cart bekharam.</p> <p>"Where can I buy a sim card?"</p>
<p>کارت اعتباری ندارم. Carte etebari nadaram.</p> <p>"I don't have a credit card."</p>	<p>هنوز هم برای ثبت نام وقت هست. Hanooz ham baraye sabte nam vaght hast.</p> <p>"There is still time for registration."</p>

GRAMMAR

While most people wouldn't or couldn't step outside without their cell phones, when visiting another country, sometimes it's a little too far for your local carrier. You can use your cell phone when you get to Iran, but you have to pay very expensive charges. So if you feel like saving money, the good old ways work like a charm.

In Iran, you can buy prepaid phone cards for cell phones. These prepaid cell phone cards are sold in kiosks and phone operator offices. They include SIM cards with PIN codes, and of course an Iranian phone number. You can insert the SIM card into your mobile phone and use it with an Iranian number. That's how easy it is! That's what we'll focus on in this lesson.

Before asking for a prepaid card, you'll want to know whether the shop you're at, even carries them. In Persian, "Do you sell prepaid cell phone cards?" is

Sim kaart-e etebaari daarid?

Sim kaart-e etebaari daarid?

Let's break it down:

The first words *Sim kaart* not surprisingly mean "SIM card."

Next we have *etebaari*, which means "credit."

After this comes *daarid*, which means "have you?"

All together, we have:

"Do you sell prepaid cell phone cards?"

The answer to this will be "yes" which is *bale*, or "no" which is *na*. If they do have the cards, you'll want to ask for one of the denominations we talked about.

Let's start with a ten thousand *toman* card.

In Persian, "A ten thousand toman card, please" is

Yek kaart-e dah hezaar tomani, lotfan.

Let's break it down:

The first word, *Yek*, means "one" or "a."

Then you have *kaart-e* which means "card," and in this case, "SIM card."

Next we have *dah hezaar* "ten thousand."

Next we have *tomani*, which you should remember is the name of Iranian money, but with an "i" at the end, so that it means "having toman"

Finally, you have *lotfan*, which means "please."

Here's the entire sentence:

This means, "A ten thousand toman card, please."

For a fifteen thousand card, you just have to change the value this way: instead of *dah*, say *paanzdah*.

If you are looking for a payphone, you'll have to ask

Telefon-e omoomi in nazdikihaa hast?

Let's break this down:

The first two words, *telephon-e omoomi*, means "public telephone" or "phone booth."

Then, *in nazdikihaa*, which you may remember is "nearby."

Then we have *hast* which is "is there?"

All together, we have

Telefon-e omoomi in nazdikihaa hast?

In English, this means "Is there a phone booth nearby?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

In Iran, public phones are getting rarer and rarer. There are some, and they accept calling cards.

Quick tip 2

Iranian people don't really use telephone cards anymore and only use cell phones or prepaid cell phone cards when they need to talk to someone. It is easy to find them, usually they are sold in kiosks and telephone operators' offices, usually called "*daftar mokhaberat*," "telecommunication offices."

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #43

Hiring a Car in Iran

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

43

PERSIAN

1. میخوامستم کرایه کنم

2. یک دوچرخه میخوامستم کرایه کنم

3. کی باید برگردونم؟

ENGLISH

1. I would like to rent a car.

2. I would like to rent a bike.

3. When must I return it?

ROMANIZATION

1. Yek mashin mikhastam keraye konam.

2. Yek docharkheh mikhastam keraye konam.

3. Kay bayad bargardoonam?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
کی	kay	when	adverb
دوچرخه	docharkheh	bicycle	noun
ماشین	maashin	car	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>کی از خواب بیدار می شوید؟ Kay az khab bidar mishavid? "When do you wake up?"</p>	<p>این مسیر دوچرخه است. In masire dochakheh ast. "This is the bicycle path."</p>
<p>با ماشین آمدم. Ba mashin amadam. I came by car.</p>	<p>باید یک دوچرخه کرایه کنم. Bayad yek diocharkheh keraye konam. "I must rent a bicycle."</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson, we'll introduce you to a phrase that will help you get to the places you need to be! In some places, trains and subways are the way to travel, but it's also very useful to know how to hire a car with a driver, like a taxi. In Iran renting a car is not usual, but you can hire a car with a driver for few hours, half a day, or the whole day.

In Persian, "I would like to hire a car" is

Yek maashin mikhaastam keraaye konam.

Let's break it down:

The first word, *yek*, means "one" and it serves as an article like "a" or "an".

Next comes *maashin*, which means "car."

Then, we have *mikhaastam* which means "I wanted."

Then there is *keraaye konam*, which is the Persian for "to hire" or "to rent."

The whole sentence again:

Yek maashin mikhaastam keraaye konam.

Renting a bicycle is not as popular as in some Mediterranean countries, but you might want to try that too:

In Persian it is *docharkhe*.

Yek docharkhe mikhaastam keraye konam.

Again, we only have one new word: *docharkhe*.

If you're renting a bicycle, it's also important to know when you must return it! So, we're giving you a phrase you can use to make sure you return it on time.

In Persian, "When must I return it?" is

Key baayad bargardoonam?

Let's break this down:

The first word, *Key*, means "when."

Next we have *baayad* which means "must" or "I must."

Then we have *bargardoonam*, which in English is "I must return."

All together, we have

Key baayad bargardoonam?

Literally, this means "When must I return it?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Driving in Iran might not be very convenient because there are a lot of traffic jams, especially in the big cities. The highway network is getting better every year, but you have to pay to use it. On the other hand, certain areas are still not connected to the highways very well, and the two-lane roads are not so fast to take. In many cases hiring a car with a driver might be the best way to get around.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #44

One Ticket to a Culturally Rich Stay in Iran, Please

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

44

PERSIAN

1. یک بلیط لطفا

2. سه تا بلیط لطفا

3. پنج تا بلیط، لطفا

4. بلیطتون ، لطفا

ENGLISH

1. One ticket, please.
2. Three tickets please.
3. Five tickets, please.
4. Your ticket, please.

ROMANIZATION

1. Yek bilit, lotfan.
2. Se ta bilit, lotfan.
3. Panj ta bilit, lotfan.
4. Bilitetoon lotfan

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
پنج تا	panj taa	five	
سه تا	se taa	three	numeral
بلیطتون	bilitetoon	your ticket	noun
یک بلیط	yek bilit	one ticket	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>پنج تا ماشین با هم تصادف کرده بودند. Panj ta mashin ba ham tasadof kardeh boodand.</p> <p>"Five cars crashed into each other."</p>	<p>بلیطتون را تا آخر برنامه نگاه دارید. bilitetoon ra ta akhar bamameh negah darid.</p> <p>"Keep your ticket until the end of the program."</p>
<p>یک بلیط اضافه دارم. Yek bilit ezafeh daram.</p> <p>"I have one extra ticket."</p>	

GRAMMAR

There is so much to see and do in Iran, and there are times when access to some must-see places requires an admission ticket. So in this lesson, we're going to work on getting you through the gate, as we look at buying tickets.

In Persian, "ticket" is

bilit

In Persian, "one ticket, please" is

Yek bilit, lotfan.

Let's break it down:

The first word, *yek*, means "one."

Next, we have *bilit*, which in Persian is "ticket."

To recap here; so far we have *Yek bilit*. Let's look at the next word, which you know very well; it's *lotfan*, and it means "please." So altogether, we have

Yek bilit, lotfan. Literally, this means, "one ticket please."

We'll work on getting tickets for the rest of the lesson.

Let's recap numbers from one to ten.

yek - "one"

do - "two"

se - "three"

chahaar - "four"

panj - "five"

shesh - "six"

haft - "seven"

hasht - "eight"

noh - "nine"

dah - "ten"

"Three tickets, please" in Persian is

Se taa bilit, lotfan.

Let's break it down.

The first word, *se* means, "three," but we need to add *taa*, which is literally "number"

Next, we have *bilit*, in the same form as before.

So altogether, we have *Se taa bilit, lotfan*.

Literally, this means, "A number of three tickets, please."

"Five tickets, please" in Persian is

Panj taa bilit, lotfan.

Very often, you may be asked to show your ticket at places other than the entrance, so keep

these with you until you leave the place you are visiting. They'll ask you "Your ticket, please."

Bilitatoon lotfan.

Let's break it down.

This means, "Your ticket, please." The first word is *Bilitatoon* which is "your ticket" in polite form.

Then, you have *lotfan* which is "please."

One more time all together, that is: *Bilitatoon lotfan.*

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

You can get discount tickets for groups, students, children, or the elderly at many places. A full price ticket for one person should be between 2,000 to 5,000 tomans.

Quick tip 2

Remember this lesson well, because all of the words and sentences here are applicable when you buy tickets for any type of place where you need an entrance ticket. You can even use the same phrase omitting the same word (*bilit*) to buy train and subway tickets, for example, *Yek bilit, lotfan.*

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #45

Do You Have a Guide in English?

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

45

PERSIAN

1. یک راهنما به زبان انگلیسی دارید؟

2. یک راهنما به زبان فرانسه دارید؟

ENGLISH

1. Do you have an English information guide?

2. Do you have a French information guide?

ROMANIZATION

1. Yek rahnama be zabaneh Inglissi darid?

2. Yek rahnama be zabaneh Farance darid?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
راهنما	rahnamaa	guide	noun
انگلیسی	Inglisi	English	noun
زبان	zabaan	language	noun
فرانسه	faraance	French	noun
یک	yek	one (1)	numeral

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>باید با راهنما برویم. Bayad ba rahnama beravid.</p> <p>"You should go with a guide."</p>	<p>در یک کلاس انگلیسی ثبت نام کردم. Dar yek kelaas Inglisi sabte naam kardam.</p> <p>"I registered for an English class."</p>
<p>یادگیری زبان برای همه لازم است. Yadgiri zaban baraye hameh zaroori ast.</p> <p>"Learning a language is necessary for everyone."</p>	<p>من فرانسه بلد هستم. Man Farance balad hastam.</p> <p>"I know French."</p>
<p>یک بار دیگر باید این فیلم را ببینم. Yek bare digar bayad in film ro bebinam.</p> <p>"I have to see this film one more time."</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson we'll introduce you to a crucial phrase for all you travellers, who are interested in learning more about the tourist attractions you're going to visit. Learning about the history and the cultural significance of places you visit can be just as rewarding as seeing them. So now we'll cover "Do you have an English information guide?"

In Persian, "Do you have an English guide?" is

Yek rahnama be zabaneh Inglissi darid?

Let's break it down:

The first word, *Yek*, as we already know is "one," and *rahnama* means "guide."

Next we have *be zabaneh*, which together means "in language."

This is followed by *Inglissi* which means "English" and *darid* or "do you have?"

All together, we have

Yek rahnama be zabaneh Inglissi darid?

To ask for a guide in a different language, we can just replace the word for "English" with the word for any other language and it works just fine. Let's try "French" in Persian.

"Do you have a French guide?" is

Yek rahnama be zabaneh Farance darid?

The only thing that changes is the language you are looking for. In this case it's *Farance*

Piece of cake!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

The official languages are Persian, but English is widely spoken in most tourist areas, so an English guide will most likely be available. You will also be surprised how many languages a local seller can speak at once! Trust me, they will ask your nationality in different languages until they find the right one.

Quick tip 2

Here are some other languages you might need to ask about!

"German" - *Almani*

"French" - *Farance*

"Spanish" - *Espanyoli*

"Italian" - *Italiiai*

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #46

How Do You Eat This Iranian Food?

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

46

PERSIAN

1. این را چطوری میخورن؟

2. این غذا سنگینه؟

ENGLISH

1. How do they eat this?

2. Is this food heavy?

ROMANIZATION

1. In ra chetori mikhoran?

2. In ghaza sangineh?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
می خورند	mikhorand	they eat	verb
غذا	ghazaa	food	noun
سنگین	sangin	heavy	adjective
چطور	Chetori	how	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>آن ها شب ها زود غذا می خورند. Anha shabha zood ghaza mikhoran. "They eat early in the evenings."</p>	<p>باید کمتر غذا بخورم تا لاغر شوم. Bayad kamtar ghaza bekhoram ta laghar shavam. I must eat less food to lose weight.</p>
<p>چیز سنگین بلند نکنید. Chiz sangin boland nakonid. "Don't lift heavy weights."</p>	<p>چطوری توانستید از این راه بروید؟ Chetori tavanestid az in rah beravid? How did you go by this way?</p>

چطوری بروم میدان انقلاب؟

Chetori beravam meydae Enghelab?
How can I go to Enghelab Square?

GRAMMAR

In Iran there are many delicious dishes! We've already covered how to order them, but now it's time to learn how to eat them! That's not always so obvious. In this lesson, we'll learn how to ask, "How do you eat this?"

In Persian, "How do they eat this?" is

In ra chetori mikhoran?

Let's break it down:

The first two words, *In ra*, mean "this one."

Then we have *chetori*, which means "how."

Then you have *mikhoran*, which is a form of the word for "they eat it."

Literally this means "How do they eat this one?"

While most Iranian dishes are quite straightforward, home cooking can get you more complicated dishes.

Use this question when in doubt:

In ra chetori mikhoran?

Iranian food has different variations depending on the region and while some of them are very healthy, some might be quite heavy. But either way, they're all very delicious. However, if you are worried about calories, we have a useful phrase for you.

The question "Is this food heavy?" in Persian is

In ghaza sangineh?

Let's break it down:

The first word, *in*, means "This" and *ghaza* means "food," so together they are *in ghaza* or "this food."

Next we have *sangineh*, which means "is it heavy." If we add *eh* at the end of the word "*sangin*," which means "heavy," we get the form "is heavy."

All together, it becomes

"Is this food heavy?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

There are many kinds of restaurants in Iran. If you are having difficulties choosing one, try to ask some locals or your hotel staff where you can have a nice Iranian meal. The easiest and best thing to do is ask for a *chelo-kababi*.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #47 Being a Vegetarian in Iran

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

47

PERSIAN

1. من گیاهخوار هستم
2. من گوشت نمیخورم
3. من پنیر نمیخورم
4. تو این غذا گوشت هست؟

ENGLISH

1. I am a vegetarian.
2. I don't eat meat.
3. I don't eat cheese.
4. Does this food have meat in it?

ROMANIZATION

1. Man giahkhar hastam.
2. Man goosht nemikhoram.
3. Man panir nemikhoram.
4. Too in ghaza goosht hast?

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
گیاهخوار	giaahkhaar	vegetarian	noun
گوشت	goosht	meat	noun
پنیر	panir	cheese	noun
نمی خورم	nemikhoram	I don't eat	verb
تو	too	inside	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>تعداد گیاهخوارها در ایران نسبتاً کم است.</p> <p>Tedad giahkhar dar Iran nesbatan kam ast.</p> <p>"The number of vegetarians is relatively low in Iran."</p>	<p>من هفته ای دو بار گوشت می خورم.</p> <p>Man haftei do bar goosht mikhoram.</p> <p>"I eat meat twice a week."</p>
<p>صبح ها همیشه پنیر می خورم.</p> <p>Sobha hamishe panir mikhoram.</p> <p>"I always eat cheese in the morning."</p>	<p>من معمولاً شام نمی خورم.</p> <p>Man mamoolan sham nemikhoram.</p> <p>"I usually don't eat supper."</p>
<p>همیشه تو این غذا گوجه فرنگی می ریزم.</p> <p>Hamishe too in ghaza goje farangi mirisam.</p> <p>"I always put tomato in this food."</p>	

GRAMMAR

This lesson is not only for all of the vegetarians out there, but it's also for anyone with an aversion to a particular kind of food! There are many reasons a person won't eat a particular food, and there may be times when communicating this is necessary. In this lesson, we'll go over some phrases to make sure you don't get any unwanted surprises on your plate.

In Persian, "I am vegetarian" is

Man giahkhar hastam,

Let's break it down by syllable.

The first word *man* means "I."

Then we have *giahkhar* means "vegetarian."

Let's break down this word and hear it one more time.

And at the end is *hastam*, which means "am."

To recap here, we have

This means "I am vegetarian."

Another way you can communicate that you don't eat a particular food is by saying just that!

In Persian, "I don't eat meat" is *Man goosht nemikhoram*.

Let's break it down by syllable.

The first word *man* means, "I" as we have just learned.

Next, we have *goosht*, which in English is "meat."

Last we have *nemikhoram*, which means "do not eat."

All together, we have *Man goosht nemikhoram*. Literally, this means, "I don't eat meat."

We can use this sentence pattern for other kinds of food by simply changing just one word! So let's look at some other possibilities. Let's try "cheese," which in Persian is *panir*.

Now let's try the phrase with this word. "I don't eat cheese" in Persian is *Man panir nemikhoram*.

Let's break it down by syllable.

If you want to make sure some food doesn't have an ingredient you can't or you don't want to eat, you should simply ask about it. For example, if you want to make sure a meal doesn't have meat, you should ask; *Too in ghaza goosht hast?* which is literally "Is there meat inside this food?"

The first word *too* means "inside."

Then you have *in ghaza*, which means "this food."

As you can remember the next word from the sentence above, *goosht*, means "meat." Finally, we have *hast* which we already know means "is there?"

Let's hear it one more time.

Too in ghaza goosht hast?

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Generally speaking, being a vegetarian in Iran is not so common. In Iran there are not many vegetarians, or people who don't like to eat meat. Vegetarian dishes or restaurants are rarely found in Iran.

Quick tip 2

Refusing to eat anything when you're a guest of a Iranian family is a little bit rude. Try to inform people of your eating habits beforehand, and I'm sure they can prepare dishes suitable for you too.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #48

Asking for Help in Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

48

PERSIAN

1. کمک

2. پلیس

3. پلیس خبر کنی

ENGLISH

1. Help!
2. Police!
3. Call the police!

ROMANIZATION

1. Komak!
2. Polis!
3. Polis khabar konid!

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
کمک	komak	help	verb
پلیس	polis	police	noun
خبر کنید	khabar konid	call	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

باید به اون کمک کنیم. Bayad be oon komak konim. "We should help him."	به پلیس خبر بدهید. Be polis khabar bedahid. "Call the police."
مردم را خبر کنید. Mardom ra khabar konid. "Call the people."	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson we'll introduce you to some phrases that we hope you won't have to use. While physical violence is not prevalent, when travelling to Iran, you should always be careful. In addition, this phrase is not limited to threatening situations, but you can also use it if you, or someone around you, is in need of immediate assistance. In this lesson, we'll learn how to call for help.

Even though no one wishes for bad or dangerous things to happen while on holiday in Iran, it's better if you know some important useful phrases to use in case of emergency.

In Persian, "Help!" is

Komak.

Now let's hear it again.

Komak! Literally, this means, "Help!"

If you need to call the police, simply shout *Polis!* Let's break it down by syllable and hear it one more time.

Polis!

As you may have guessed, it means "Police!"

You also should learn to say: "Call the police!" which is *Polis khabar konid!*

As you know, *Polis*, means "police."

polis

The second two words are *khavar konid*, and mean "do call."

Let's hear the entire sentence again:

Polis khavar konid!

The phone number for the police in Iran is 110. You can easily call it from a public phone or a cell phone. Make sure that in an emergency, you know how to ask for a public phone.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Getting mugged or jumped is very rare in Iran. If you want to be safe, the same considerations apply here, as in any other country. Watch out for pickpockets, watch your belongings, and you should be fine. In the unlikely event that you become the victim of crime, contact the Police by dialing 110.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #49

Using Persian to Get Medical Assistance

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

49

PERSIAN

1. لطفا مرا به بیمارستان برسونید

2. لطفا مرا به دکتر برسونید

ENGLISH

1. Please take me to the hospital.
2. Please take me to the doctor.

ROMANIZATION

1. Lotfan mara be bimarestan beresoonid!
2. Lotfan mara be doctor beresoonid!

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
مرا	maraa	me	pronoun
برسونید	beresoonid	take it	verb
بیمارستان	bimaarestaan	hospital	noun
دکتر	doctor	doctor	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>هر وقت آمديد مرا صدا كنيد. Har vaght amadid mara seda konid.</p> <p>"Call me when you come."</p>	<p>اين را به اداره برسونيد. In ra be edareh beresoonid.</p> <p>"Take it to the department."</p>
<p>اون در بيمارستان كار مي كند. Oon dar bimarestan kar mikonad.</p> <p>"She works in a hospital."</p>	<p>الان دكتور مي تواند شما را ببيند. Alan doctor mitavanad shoma ra bebinad.</p> <p>Now the doctor can see you.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson, we'll introduce you to some phrases you will find useful in case you need medical assistance. When travelling, sometimes the body takes a little time to adjust, and the immune system is no different. In this lesson, we'll go over some phrases that will help get you to a location where you can get medical assistance. We'll start with the phrase "Please take me to the hospital."

In Persian, "Please take me to the hospital" is

Lotfan mara be bimarestan beresoonid.

First, we have *lotfan*, which is "please" in English, as you may remember. Next we have *mar*, which is "me" or "myself."

After this is *be bimarestan*. This in English is literally "to hospital."

Then we have *beresoonid* which means "take."

All together, we have

Lotfan mara be bimarestan beresoonid.

We translate it as "Please take me to the hospital."

If you would like someone to take you to visit a doctor, you can use the following phrase. "Please take me to the doctor," which is

Lotfan mara be doctor beresoonid.

Let's break it down.

Lotfan mara be doctor beresoonid.

As you can see, this phrase is very similar to the previous one.

The only thing that changes is *doctor* in place of *bimarestan*.

All together, we have

Lotfan mara be doctor beresoonid.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Summer in Iran gets so hot. Recently, there have been summers when the temperature climbs up to 45 degrees Celsius, but as the climate is very dry, it's still comfortable in the shade. Remember the sun protection to avoid sun burns.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases #50

Explaining Symptoms in Persian

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

50

PERSIAN

1. ببخشید، شما دوی سرماخوردگی دارید؟

2. من سردرد دارم

3. من دل درد دارم

ENGLISH

1. Excuse me, Do you have cold medicine?
2. I have a headache.
3. I have a stomachache.

ROMANIZATION

1. Bebahshid, shoma davaye sarmakhordegi darid?
2. Man sardard daram.
3. Man deldard daram.

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
شما	shomaa	you	pronoun
دوا	davaa	medication	noun
سرماخوردگی	sarmaakhordegi	cold	adjective

دارید	daarid	you have	verb
سردرد	sardard	headache	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>من خوبم، شما چطورید؟ Man khubam, shoma chetorid? I'm fine, how about you?</p>	<p>شما چه تاریخی به ایران آمدید؟ Shoma che tarikhi be Iran amadid? "What date did you come to Iran?"</p>
<p>برای این بیماری باید دوا بخورید. Baraye in bimari bayad dava bekhord. "You should take medication for this disease."</p>	<p>برای سرماخوردگی باید قرص مسکن خورد. Baraye sarmakhordegi bayad ghorse mosaken khord. "You should take painkillers when you catch a cold."</p>
<p>شما سردرد دارید؟ Shoma sardard darid? "Have you got a headache?"</p>	<p>من برای سردرد آسپیرین می خورم. Man baraye sardard aspirin mikhoram. "I take aspirin for my headache."</p>

GRAMMAR

Once you are in the pharmacy, you will need to explain how you feel in order to let the pharmacist give you the right medicines. In this lesson, we'll work on explaining symptoms so you can get the proper treatment and any medicine you may need.

Let's try to make a list of all the possible things you might need.

In Persian, "cold medicine" is *davaye sarmakhordegi*.

"Do you have cold medicine?" in Persian is

Shoma davaye sarmakhordegi darid?

The first word *Shoma* means, "you."

Then you have *davaye sarmakhordegi*, which we can divide in two words: the first one

davaye means, "medication,"

And the second word *sarmakhordegi* means cold.

At the end we have *darid*, and this one we know already which means "do you have."

Let's see how to explain your symptoms.

In Persian, "I have a headache" is

Man sardard daram.

The first word is *man*, which means "I."

Next we have *sardard* which means, "Headache." This is composed of two parts *sar* and *dard* which are "head" and "ache."

After this we have, *daram*, which means, "have."

Literally, this means, "I have a headache."

If it's your stomach that's hurting, you can say *man deldard daram.*

This is a very straightforward sentence. All we do is put in *deldard* which means stomachache. This again is composed of two parts: *del* and *dard* which "stomach" and "ache."

The rest means the same.

This sentence is easy to use for other aches too, just change the word *sar* ("head") or *del* ("stomach") with other body parts and add *dard* (pain) to it.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick tip 1

Here's a list of over-the-counter medicine for various problems:

Aspirin - Aspirin.

Acetaminophen - Acetaminophen

Don't forget to consult a doctor or pharmacist before taking any of these!



PersianPod101.com



LEARN PERSIAN: DISCOVER
**IRANIAN
CULTURE
& TRADITIONS**



PersianPod101.com

BONUS
TRAVEL TO
IRAN
CHEAT SHEET

innovativeLANGUAGE.COM

If you love the **Persian** language,
then you'll love this!

Get our Complete **Persian** Learning Program
at **PersianPod101.com**.

- Speak **Persian** From Your First Lesson
- Access hundreds of Audio & Video Courses
by Real Teachers
- Get **FREE** New Lessons Every Week
- Learn Anywhere, Anytime on Any Android
Device or Computer



Go to
PersianPod101.com
and sign up for your

FREE

Lifetime Account!



PersianPod101.com

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #1 National Holidays

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

1

PERSIAN

What are the five most important public holidays in Iran? .1

1.2 .1. عید نوروز

2.3 .2. روز طبیعت (سیزده به در)

3.4 .3. مبعث حضرت رسول اکرم

4.5 .4. سالگرد پیروزی انقلاب

5.6 .5. تولد حضرت مهدی

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most important public holidays in Iran?

2. 1. Iranian New Year

3. 2. Nature day

4. 3. Muhammad's first revelation

5. 4. Iranian Revolution Anniversary

6. 5. Birth of Imam Mahdi

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most important public holidays in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. Eid-e Nowrooz
3. 2. rooz-e tabiaat (sizdah bedar)
4. 3. mabaas-e hazrat-e rasool-e akram
5. 4. saalgard-e piroozi-e enqelaab
6. 5. tavallo-d-e hazrat-e mahdi

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
عید نوروز	Eid-e Nowrooz	Iranian New Year	phrase
روز طبیعت (سیزده به در)	rooz-e tabiaat (sizdah bedar)	Nature Day	phrase
مبعث حضرت رسول اکرم	mabaas-e hazrat-e rasool-e akram	Muhammad's first revelation	phrase
سالگرد پیروزی انقلاب	saalgard-e piroozi-e enqelaab	Iranian Revolution Anniversary	phrase
تولد حضرت مهدی	tavallo-d-e hazrat-e mahdi	Birth of Imam Mahdi	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>نوروز جشن آغاز سال و یکی از قدیمی ترین جشن‌های به جا مانده از ایران باستان است.</p> <p>norooz jashn-e aaqaaz-e saal va yeki az qadimitarin jashnhaaye be jaa maande az iraan-e baastan ast.</p> <p>Nowruz is the beginning of the year ceremony and one of the most ancient ceremonies of Old Persia.</p>	<p>روز طبیعت یا سیزده‌به‌در سیزدهمین روز از ماه فروردین است.</p> <p>rooz-e tabi'at yaa sizdah be dar sizdahomin rooz az maah-e farvardin ast.</p> <p>Nature Day is the 13th day of Farvardin.</p>
<p>حضرت محمد در روز مبعث جبرئیل را ملاقات کرد.</p> <p>hazrat-e mohammad dar rooz-e mab'as jabra'il raa molaqaat kard.</p> <p>Prophet Muhammad met the angel Gabriel on "Mab'as" day.</p>	<p>سالگرد پیروزی انقلاب روز ۲۲ بهمن است.</p> <p>saalgard-e piroozi-e enqelaab rooz-e 22 bahman ast.</p> <p>The anniversary of the Islamic Revolution is on the 22nd of Bahman.</p>

نیمه شعبان روز تولد امام مهدی است.

nime sha'baan rooz-e tavallod-e emaam mahdi ast.

Nime Sha'baan is Imam Mahdi's birthday.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Iranian New Year

Iranian New Year marks the first day of spring and the beginning of the year in the Iranian calendar. It's celebrated and observed principally in Iran, but has also spread to many other parts of the world. In Iran, this official holiday lasts for 13 days.

2. Nature day

This is a traditional Persian ceremony that takes place on the thirteenth day of the first month of the Iranian calendar, when people spend the day outdoors. It may have started because some people believe thirteen is an unlucky number, so everybody should stay outside on that day.

3. Muhammad's first

revelation

Muhammad's first revelation celebrates when the angel Gabriel revealed to him a verse from the Quran. It's a big ceremony in Iran, where they decorate the streets with illumination and hand out sweets, making it a traditional wedding day as well.

4. Iranian Revolution Anniversary

The Anniversary of the Iranian Revolution celebrates the overthrow of the empire and replacement with an Islamic republic. During this ten-day festivity, there are many events and activities to mark the victory of the Islamic Revolution.

5. Birth of Imam Mahdi

The birthday of Imam Mahdi, the 12th imam of Shia Muslims, is marked as the Day of the Deprived, to show people who are less fortunate that there's no need to despair.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #2 Foods

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

2

PERSIAN

What are the five most popular foods in Iran? .1

1. خورش کرفس .2

2. کوفته تبریزی .3

3. آش رشته .4

4. قورمه سبزی .5

5. کله پاچه .6

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular foods in Iran?
2. 1. celery stew
3. 2. Tabrizi meatball
4. 3. Ash Reshteh
5. 4. Persian green herb stew
6. 5. sheep head and feet soup

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most popular foods in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. khoresht-e karafs
3. 2. koofte tabrizi
4. 3. aash-e reshte
5. 4. qorme sabzi
6. 5. kalle paache

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
خورشت کرفس	khoresht-e karafs	celery stew	phrase
کوفته تبریزی	koofte tabrizi	Tabrizi meatball	phrase
آش رشته	aash-e reshte	Ash Reshteh	phrase
قورمه سبزی	qorme sabzi	Persian green herb stew	phrase
کله پاچه	kalle paache	sheep head and feet soup	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>خورشت کرفس یکی از خورش‌های اصیل ایرانی است .</p> <p>khoresht-e karafs yeki az khoreshhaaye asil-e iraani ast.</p> <p>Celery stew is one of the original Iranian stews.</p>	<p>کوفته تبریزی یکی از غذاهای معروف تبریز است .</p> <p>koofte tabrizi yeki az qazaahaaye maroof-e tabriz ast.</p> <p>Tabrizi meatball is one of the famous foods from Tabriz.</p>
---	---

آش رشته یکی از معروفترین و
متداولترین آش‌های بومی ایران است.

aash-e reshte yeki az marooftarin va
motadaaveltarin aashhaaye boomi-e iraan ast.

Ash Reshteh is one of the most popular
and common Iranian stews.

قرمه سبزی یک خورشید ایرانی درست
شده از سبزیجات است.

qorme sabzi yek khoreshht-e iraani dorost shode
az sabzijaat ast.

Persian green herb stew is a Persian stew
that's made from vegetables.

مردم معمولاً کله پاچه را صبح زود می‌خورند.

mardom mamoolan kalle paache raa sobh-e zood mikhorand.

People usually eat Kale Pache early in the morning.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Celery stew

This is an Iranian stew that's served with rice. It's made of onion, celery, mint, parsley, salt, pepper and beef or lamb.

2. Tabrizi meatball

This dish consists of balls of minced or ground beef or lamb, mixed with spices and onions, peas, rice, and egg. In Iran, they also have barberries, dried plum, and walnut inside the meatball.

3. Ash Reshteh

Ash Reshteh is a type of stew commonly made in Iran. The ingredients used are thin noodles, a dairy product called kashk, chickpeas, black eye beans, lentils, spinach, onions, and herbs such as parsley and dill.

4. Persian green herb stew

The main ingredients in Persian green herb stew are a mixture of sauteed herbs—consisting mainly of parsley, leeks or green onions, coriander, and spinach. It's seasoned with the key spice of *shambalileh*, or dried fenugreek leaves.

5. Sheep head and feet soup

This is a traditional dish in Iran. It's made with lamb's head—including the brain, eyes, and tongue—as well as its hooves, seasoned with lemon and cinnamon.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #3 Beverages

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

3

PERSIAN

What are the five most popular beverages in Iran? .1

1. آب پرتقال .2

2. دوغ .3

3. آب انار .4

4. چایی دارچینی .5

5. آب هویج .6

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular beverages in Iran?
2. 1. Orange juice
3. 2. Doogh
4. 3. Pomegranate juice
5. 4. Cinnamon tea
6. 5. Carrot juice

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most popular beverages in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. aab porteqaal
3. 2. dooq-e
4. 3. aab-e anaar
5. 4. chaee daarchini
6. 5. aab havij

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
آب پرتقال	aab porteqaal	orange juice	phrase
دوغ	dooq-e	doogh	noun
آب انار	aab-e anaar	pomegranate juice	phrase
چایی دارچینی	chaee daarchini	cinamon tea	phrase
آب هویج	aab havij	carrot juice	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>آب پرتقال یک نوشیدنی بسیار خوشمزه همراه با صبحانه است.</p> <p>aab porteqaal yek nooshidani-e besyaar khoshmazze hamraah baa sobhaane ast.</p> <p>Orange juice is a very delicious drink at breakfast.</p>	<p>دوغ یک نوشیدنی بسیار متداول همراه با کباب می باشد.</p> <p>dooq-e aabali yek nooshidani-e besyaar motadaavel hamraah ba kabaab mibaashad.</p> <p>Doogh is very popular drink with Kebab.</p>
--	--

از آب انار جهت درست کردن رب انار استفاده می شود که ماده اصلی خورش فسنجان می باشد.

az aab-e anaar jahat-e dorost kardan-e rob-e anaar estefaade mishavad ke maade asli khoresh-t-e fesenjan mibaashad.

Pomegranate juice is used for making "rob-e anar," which is a main ingredient of "Fesenjan" stew.

چای دارچینی یک نوشیدنی گرم است که برای روزهای سرد مناسب است.

chaay daarchini yek nooshidani-e garm ast ke baraaye roozhaaye sard monaaseb ast.

Cinnamon tea is a hot drink suitable for drinking on cold days.

آب هویج به همراه بستنی وانیلی یک دسر خوشمزه و معروف در ایران است.

aab havij be hamraah-e bastani vanili yek deser-e khoshmazze va maroof dar iraan ast.

Carrot juice with vanilla ice cream is a delicious and famous desert in Iran.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Orange juice

Orange juice is one of the most popular juices in Iran. Iranians think it's the best medicine for the flu because of its high concentration of vitamin C.

2. Doogh

The traditional drink accompanying Iranian dishes is doogh, a combination of yogurt, still or carbonated water, salt, and dried mint. It's an excellent source of calcium, protein, and potassium.

3. Pomegranate juice

The pomegranate is widely considered to have originated in Iran and has been cultivated since ancient times. Pomegranate was a symbol of fertility in ancient Persian culture. Pomegranate juice and paste can be found in some Iranian chicken dishes, ghormas, and refreshment bars.

4. Cinnamon tea

Tea is the hot beverage of choice in Iran, where it's served for breakfast, lunch, dinner, and in

between. Cinnamon tea is one of the most famous teas in Iran, and it is made from cinnamon sticks and black tea.

5. Carrot juice

Carrot juice is often consumed as a health drink. Iranians also use carrots to make many other delicious and healthy foods like carrot stew, carrot halva, carrot juice with ice cream, carrot jam, and pickled carrot.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #4 Popular homecooked meals

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

4

PERSIAN

What are the five most popular home cooked meals in Iran? .1

1.2 .1 کوکو سبزی

2.3 .2 آبگوشت

3.4 .3 لوبیا پلو

4.5 .4 قیمه پلو

5.6 .5 کوکو سیب زمینی

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular home cooked meals in Iran?

2. 1. Persian herb quiche

3. 2. Persian lamb shank soup

4. 3. Green bean rice

5. 4. Split yellow pea stew

6. 5. Persian potato quiche

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most popular home cooked meals in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. kookoo sabzi
3. 2. aabgoosht
4. 3. loobiaa polo
5. 4. qeime polo
6. 5. kookoo sibzamini

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
کوکو سبزی	kookoo sabzi	Persian herb quiche	phrase
آبگوشت	aabgoosht	Persian lamb shank soup	phrase
لوبیا پلو	loobiaa polo	green bean rice	phrase
قیمه پلو	qeime polo	split yellow pea stew	phrase
کوکو سیبزمینی	kookoo sibzamini	Persian potato quiche	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>کوکو سبزی سرشار از ویتامین بوده و به دلیل سریع آماده شدن بسیار محبوب می باشد.</p> <p>kookoo sabzi sarshaar az vitaamin boode va be dalil-e sari aamaade shodan besyaar mahboob mibaashad.</p> <p>Persian herb quiche includes lots of vitamins, and because of its fast preparation, it's very popular.</p>	<p>آبگوشت به طور سنتی در دیگ های کوچک سنگی و یا یک دیگ فلزی پخته می شود.</p> <p>aabgoosht be tor-e sonnati dar dighaaye koochak-e sangi va yaa yek dig-e felezi pokhte mishavad.</p> <p>Persian lamb shank soup is traditionally cooked in a small stone pot or a metal pot.</p>
--	--

ایرانی ها معمولا لوبیا پلو را همراه با
سالاد شیرازی سرو می کنند.

iraanihaa mamoolan loobiaa polo raa hamraah
baa saalaad-e shiraaazi serv mikonand.

Iranians usually serve Persian Green
Bean Rice with shirazi salad.

قیمه پلو معروفترین غذای نذری
می باشد که در روز عاشورا پخته می
شود.

qeime polo ma'rooftarin qazaaye nazri mibaashad
ke dar rooz-e aashooraa pokhte mishavad.

Split yellow pea stew is the most famous
food served during "Ashura".

کوکو سیب زمینی یک انتخاب خوب برای درست کردن زمان رفتن به پیکنیک می باشد.
kookoo sibzamini yek entekhaab-e khoob baraaye dorost kardan zamaan-e raftan be piknik mibaashad.

Persian potato quiche is a good choice to make when going on a picnic.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Persian herb quiche

Persian herb quiche uses six different herbs and greens, and can be prepared in fifteen minutes. In some parts of Iran it's cooked during Persian New Year celebrations.

2. Persian lamb shank soup

This dish is traditionally cooked in a small stone crock pot or a metal cooking pot. Originally, it was only made with lamb and chickpeas. But nowadays, it also uses other ingredients such as potatoes and tomatoes.

3. Green bean rice

Persian Green Bean Rice is one of the most popular Iranian dishes. It is a combination of rice, green beans, tomato sauce, and spices.

4. Split yellow pea stew

Split yellow pea stew is one of the most famous Persian stews, and it's usually served with Persian rice. This stew is a combination of split yellow peas, dried limes, beef, onion, tomato paste, potatoes, and spices.

5. Persian potato

quiche

Persian potato quiche is a very popular dish, prepared for a light lunch or supper, picnic food, or to feed unexpected guests. It has potatoes, eggs, salt, and black pepper.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #5 Sweets and desserts

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

5

PERSIAN

What are the five most popular sweets and desserts in Iran? .1

1. کیک یزدی .2

2. پشمک .3

3. حلوا .4

4. مسقطی .5

5. پولکی .6

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular sweets and desserts in Iran?

2. 1. Cake Yazdi

3. 2. Persian fairy floss

4. 3. Halva

5. 4. Starch fudge

6. 5. Poolaki

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most popular sweets and desserts in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. keik yazdi
3. 2. pashmak
4. 3. halva
5. 4. masqati
6. 5. poolaki

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
کیک یزدی	keik yazdi, keik	cake Yazdi, cake	noun
پشمک	pashmak	Persian fairy floss	noun
حلوا	halva	halva	noun
مسقطی	masqati	starch fudge	noun
پولکی	poolaki	poolaki	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>آیا باید برای تولدش کیک تهیه کنیم؟ ayaa baayad baraaye tavallodash keik tahieh konim?</p> <p>Shall we prepare a cake for his birthday?</p>	<p>کیک یزدی یک دسر خوشمزه است که می توان در هر زمان از طول روز از آن لذت برد.</p> <p>keik yazdi yek deser-e khoshmaze ast ke mitavaan dar har zamaan az tool-e rooz az aan lezzat bord.</p> <p>Cake Yazdi is a delicious dessert that can be enjoyed at any time of the day.</p>
---	--

<p>پشتمک معمولا در مکان‌های عمومی مثل پارک‌ها فروخته می‌شود.</p> <p>pashmak mamoolan dar makaanhaaye omoomi mesl-e paarkhaa forookhte mishavad.</p> <p>Persian cotton candy is usually sold in common places like parks.</p>	<p>حلوا معمولا در مراسم عزاداری به خاطر از دست دادن عزیزان درست می‌شود.</p> <p>halvaa mamoolan dar maraasem-e azaadaari be khaater-e az dast daadan-e azizaan dorost mishavad.</p> <p>Halva is usually made for mourning ceremonies on behalf of the lost loved ones.</p>
<p>مسقطی یکی از شیرینی‌های معروف ایرانی است که از سوغاتی‌های شیراز محسوب می‌شود.</p> <p>masqati yeki az shirinihaaye maroof-e iraani ast ke az soqaatihaaye shiraaz mahsoob mishavad.</p> <p>Starch fudge is one of the famous sweets of Iran and is considered as a special souvenir of Shiraz.</p>	<p>پولکی یکی از سوغاتی‌ها و شیرینی‌های معروف اصفهان است.</p> <p>poolaki yeki az soqaatihaa va shirinihaaye maroof-e esfahaan ast.</p> <p>Poolaki is one of the sweets and souvenirs of Isfahan.</p>

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Cake Yazdi

Cake Yazdi is a no-frosting, mildly sweet cupcake with a rosewater aroma, cardamom flavor, and chopped pistachios sprinkled on top. The name comes after the city of Yazd, in central Iran.

2. Persian fairy floss

This is a kind of cotton candy. Since it's mostly air, it's usually large and voluminous. The name in Persian means "wool-like", since it resembles sheep's wool.

3. Halva

Halva is a confection made from wheat flour and butter, flavored with rose water. It is usually served for funerals, often with almonds or coconut shavings on top.

4. Starch fudge

This traditional sweet is made of starch infused with aromatic rosewater and saffron. Traditionally, it is cut into diamond shapes, garnished with pistachios and almonds, and served with tea.

5. Poolaki

Poolaki is a caramelized hard sugar candy made mainly in Isfahan, similar to toffee. It is flavored with saffron, dried lime, or cocoa powder, and is shaped into small circles.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #6 Fruits

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

6

PERSIAN

What are the five most popular fruits in Iran .1

1.2 .1 انار

2.3 .2 انگور

3.4 .3 خربزه

4.5 .4 گيلاس

5.6 .5 به

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular fruits in Iran?
2. 1. pomegranate
3. 2. grape
4. 3. honeydew
5. 4. cherry
6. 5. quince

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most popular fruits in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. anaar
3. 2. angoor
4. 3. kharboze
5. 4. gilaas
6. 5. beh

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
انار	anaar	pomegranate	noun
انگور	angoor	grape	noun
خریزه	kharboze	honeydew	noun
گیلاس	gilaas	cherry	noun
به	beh	quince	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>ایران بزرگ‌ترین تولیدکنندهٔ انار در دنیا می‌باشد.</p> <p>iraan bozorgtarin tolid konandeye anaar dar donyaa mibaashad.</p> <p>Iran is the biggest producer of pomegranate in the world.</p>	<p>از برگ انگور برای درست کردن دلمه استفاده می‌شود.</p> <p>az barg-e angoor baraaeye dorost kardan-e dolme estefaade mishavad.</p> <p>Grape leaves are used to make dolma.</p>
--	--

خوردن خربزه با عسل برای معده مضر است.

khordan-e kharboze baa asal baraaye me'de mozer ast.

Eating honeydew with honey is harmful for the stomach.

ایران سومین تولید کننده گیلاس در جهان پس از ترکیه و آمریکا می باشد.

iraan sevvomin tolid konande gilaas dar jahaan pas az torkie va aamrikaa mibaashad.

Iran is the third largest producer of cherries in the world after Turkey and the US.

مریای به بسیار در ایران معروف می باشد.

morabbaaye beh besyaar dar iraan maroof mibaashad.

Quince jam is very famous in Iran.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Pomegranate

The pomegranate is believed to have originated in Iran. Its juice and paste are used in some Iranian food. Pomegranate skins can also be used to stain wool and silk in the carpet industry.

2. Grape

Grapes are eaten raw and can be used for making juice, jelly, grape seed extract, raisins, vinegar, and grape seed oil in Iran. Iranians also use grape leaves for making dolma, a delicious Iranian meal.

3. Honeydew

Honeydew is kind of melon, which is originally from Iran. It's common in Iran to eat honeydew with food or after the meal as a dessert. It's a very popular summer fruit.

4. Cherry

Iranians use cherries as a fruit or to make jam and compote.

5. Quince

In Iran, quince fruit is consumed raw or in stews or soups, made into jam or pickled. The syrup left when making jam is also used to prepare a refreshing summer drink.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #7 Vegetables

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

7

PERSIAN

What are the five most popular vegetables in Iran? .1

1. کدو تنبل .2

2. اسفناج .3

3. کرفس .4

4. باقالی .5

5. کدو .6

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular vegetables in Iran?

2. 1. pumpkin

3. 2. spinach

4. 3. celery

5. 4. broad beans

6. 5. zucchini

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most popular vegetables in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. kadoo tanbal
3. 2. esfenaaj
4. 3. karafs
5. 4. baaqaali
6. 5. kadoo

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
کدو تنبل	kadoo tanbal	pumpkin	noun
اسفناج	esfenaaj	spinach	noun
کرفس	karafs	celery	noun
باقالی	baaqaali	broad beans	noun
کدو	kadoo	zucchini	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ایرانی ها از کدو تنبل برای درست کردن
غذاها و دسرهای مختلفی استفاده می
کنند.

Iraanihaa az kadoo tanbal baraaye dorost kardan-
e qazaahaa va deserhaaye mokhtalefi estefaade
mikonand.

Iranians use pumpkin to make a variety of
foods and desserts.

ماست و اسفناج یک دسر ایرانی است.

maast o esfenaaj (boraani) yek deser-e iraani ast.

Spinach with yogurt is a Persian appetizer.

خورشت کرفس از غذاهای اصیل ایرانی است.

khoresht-e karafs az qazaahaaye asil irani ast.

Celery stew is one of the original Iranian stews.

باقالی پلو با ماهیچه یک غذای رسمی برای میهمانی های ایرانی است.

baaqaali polo baa maahiche yek qazaaye rasmi baraaye mihmaanihaaye iraani ast.

Broad beans with rice and lamb shank is a formal food for Iranian parties.

کدوی سبز برای درست کردن یک خورشت خوشمزه ایرانی مورد استفاده قرار می گیرد.

kadooy-e sabz baraaye dorost kardan-e yek khoreshht khoshmazze-ye iraani mored-e estefaade qaraar migirad.

The zucchini is used to make a delicious Iranian stew.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Pumpkin

Pumpkin can be found in many Iranian dishes, including pie, mousse, puree, cake, heated pumpkin seed as a snack, or in Pumpkin Khoreshht, a famous Iranian dish.

2. Spinach

Spinach is a common vegetable in Persian cooking. Iranians use it to prepare yogurt dessert, turtilla, soups, and stews.

3. Celery

Celery is used both as a vegetable and a seasoning. Iranians use celery for making stews, salads, soups and many kinds of pickles.

4. Broad beans

Broad beans are cultivated in the central and north parts of Iran. The dried beans can be cooked with rice to form one of the most famous dishes in Iran, called *baghalee polo*.

5. Zucchini

The zucchini is a summer squash, used in many Iranian dishes, such as soups, salads or the zucchini stew.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #8 Food Souvenirs

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

8

PERSIAN

What are the five most popular food souvenirs in Iran? .1

1. قطاب .2

2. کلوچه .3

3. نان شیرمال .4

4. سوهان .5

5. گز .6

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular food souvenirs in Iran?

2. 1. qotaab

3. 2. koloocheh

4. 3. sheermal

5. 4. sohan

6. 5. gaz

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most popular food souvenirs in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. qotaab
3. 2. kolooche
4. 3. nan shirmal
5. 4. sohaan
6. 5. gaz

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
قطاب	qotaab	qotaab	noun
کلوچه	kolooche	koloocheh	noun
نان شیرمال	nan shirmal	sheermal	noun
سوهان	sohaan	sohan	noun
گز	gaz	gaz	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>قطاب معروفترین شیرینی سنتی شهر یزد است.</p> <p>qotaab ma'rooftarin shiriniyr sonatiye shahr-e yazd ast.</p> <p>Qottab is the most famous traditional sweet pastry of Yazd.</p>	<p>کلوچه نوعی شیرینی ایرانی است که در بخش های مختلفی از ایران درست می شود.</p> <p>kolooche noi shirini-e iraaani ast ke dar bakhshhaaye mokhtalefi az iraan dorost mishavad.</p> <p>Koloocheh is a kind of Persian cookie made in various parts of Iran.</p>
---	--

نان شیرمال، نانی سنتی با طعم زعفران
است که در ایران تهیه می شود.

naan-e shirmaal, naani sonnati baa ta'm-e
za'feraan ast ke dar iraan tahie mishavad.

Sheermal is a saffron-flavored traditional
bread made in Iran.

سوهان شکننده و به رنگ کارامل است.
sohaan shekanande va be rang-e kaaraamel ast.

Sohan is brittle and caramel in color.

گزیکی از تنقلات شیرین معروف و سنتی ایران است.

Gaz yeki az tanagholaat-e shirin-e maerof va sonnati-e iraan ast.

Gaz is one of the most famous and traditional sweet snacks of Iran.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Qotaab

This is a deep-fried pastry filled with almonds and cardamom, then rolled in icing sugar. The city of Yazd is well known for its qotaab.

2. Koloocheh

Koloocheh is a Persian cookie made in various parts of Iran, but the most famous comes from Lahijan. In the south of Iran, it's prepared during Iranian New Year.

3. Sheermal

This is a traditional Iranian saffron-flavored flatbread. It's a very delicious type of bread that can be served for breakfast and also with many foods.

4. Sohan

Sohan Halwa is a saffron brittle toffee, produced in Qom and Isfahan. It is known as the Gift of Qom, and pilgrims and travelers to the holy city of Qom buy it as a souvenir.

5. Gaz

Gaz is a Persian nougat from the cities of Isfahan and Boldaji. The main ingredient is Gaz Angabin, which is the root of the tamarisk tree that comes from around this area.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #9 Pop and Traditional Culture

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

9

PERSIAN

What are the five most popular pop or traditional culture in Iran? .1

1.2 .1 چهارشنبه سوری

2.3 .2 بله برون

3.4 .3 پاتختی

4.5 .4 شب یلدا

5.6 .5 خانه تکانی

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular pop or traditional culture in Iran?
2. 1. Wednesday feast
3. 2. Bale Boroun
4. 3. Patakhti
5. 4. Yalda night
6. 5. Spring cleaning

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most popular pop or traditional culture in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. chaahaarshanbe soori
3. 2. bale boroon
4. 3. paatakhti
5. 4. Shab-e Yaldae
6. 5. khaane tekaani

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
چهارشنبه سوری	chaahaarshanbe soori	Wednesday feast	phrase
بله برون	bale boroon	Bale Boroun	phrase
پاتختی	paatakhti	Patakhti	noun
شب یلدا	Shab-e Yaldae	Yalda night	noun
خانه تکانی	khaane tekaani	Spring cleaning	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>چهارشنبه سوری، شب آخرین سه شنبه سال ایرانی است.</p> <p>chahaarshanbe soori, shab-e aakharin se shanbe saal-e iraani ast.</p> <p>Wednesday Feast is the last Tuesday night of the Iranian year.</p>	<p>مراسم بله برون زمان کوتاهی پس از خواستگاری رسمی برگزار می شود.</p> <p>marasem-e bale boroon zamaan-e kootaahi pas az khaastegaari-e rasmi bargozaar mishavad.</p> <p>Bale Boroun ceremony takes place a short time after the formal proposal.</p>
---	--

در پاتختی، بستگان عروس و داماد برای آن ها هدیه می آورند.

dar paatakhti, bastegaan-e aroos va daamaad baraaye aanhaa hedia miaavarand.

On Patakhti, the relatives of the bride and the groom bring them presents.

در شب یلدا، اعضای خانواده با هم در خانه بزرگتر خانواده جمع می شوند و تمام شب را بیدار می مانند.

dar shab-e yaldae, a'zaaye khaanevaade baa ham dar khaane bozorgtar-e khaanevaade jam mishavand va tamaam-e shab raa bidaar mimaanand.

On Yalda night, family members get together in the house of the eldest member and stay awake all night long.

یکی از مقدمات استقبال از بهار و سال نو خانه تکانی است.

yeki az moqadamaat-e esteqbaal az bahaar va saal-e no khaane tekaani ast.

One of the preparations to welcome the spring and the New Year is the spring cleaning.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Wednesday feast

Also known as the Festival of Fire, the celebration starts on the last Tuesday evening of the Iranian year. Iranians make bonfires in the streets and jump over them, while singing and asking the fire to take their sickness and problems and in turn give them warmth and energy.

2. Bale Boroun

Bale Boroun is the ceremony that takes place after a formal proposal, publicly announcing the couple's intention of marriage. The groom's parents usually give a gift to the bride, which is traditionally a piece of cloth and a ring.

3. Patakhti

Patakhti is similar to a bridal shower, but is held after the wedding. The bride wears floral ornaments, and the house is decorated with flowers. The guests bring them presents and money, and it's celebrated with dancing and singing.

4. Yalda night

On Yalda festival, Iranians celebrate the renewal of the sun and the victory of light over darkness. On this night, family members get together and stay awake all night long. Dried nuts, watermelon, and pomegranate are served, as supplications to God for increasing his bounty.

5. Spring cleaning

The spring cleaning takes place before the Iranian New Year. It literally means "shaking the house," and on this day, Iranians clean the house thoroughly.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #10 Traditional Clothing

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

10

PERSIAN

What are the five most popular traditional clothing in Iran .1

1.2 .بختیاری

2.3 .قوچانی

3.4 .قشقای

4.5 .کردی

5.6 .بلوچی

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular traditional clothing in Iran?
2. 1. bakhtiari dress
3. 2. qoochani
4. 3. qashqai dress
5. 4. kurdish clothing
6. 5. baluchi male clothing

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most popular traditional clothing in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. bakhtiari
3. 2. qoochaani
4. 3. qashqaayi
5. 4. kordi
6. 5. baloochi

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
بختیاری	bakhtiari	bakhtiari dress	noun
قوچانی	qoochaani	qoochani	noun
قشقای	qashqaayi	qashqai dress	noun
کردی	kordi	kurdish clothing	noun
بلوچی	baloochi	baluchi male clothing	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>لباس بختیاری سنتی برای زنان متشکل از یک دامن بلند رنگارنگ با لایه های بسیار زیادی است.</p> <p>lebaas-e bakhriaari-e sonnati baraaye zanaan motashakel az yek daaman-e boland-e rangaarang ba laayehaaye besyaar ziaadi ast.</p> <p>The traditional Bakhtiari dress for women consists of a long colorful skirt with many layers.</p>	<p>در زبان قوچانی دامن، "شیلوار" نامیده میشود.</p> <p>dar zabaan qoochaani daaman, "shilvaar" naamide mishavad.</p> <p>Skirt is called 'Shilvar' in Qoochani language.</p>
---	--

لباس زنان قشقایی با رنگارنگی و تنوعش شناخته می‌شود.

lebaas zan-e qashqayi baa rangarangi va tanavvoaesh shenaakhte mishavad.

Women's Qashqai clothes are known for their color variations.

لباس کردی معمولا دارای یک کمر بند خیلی پهن است.

lebaas-e kordi mamoolan daaraaye yek kamarband-e kheili pahn ast.

Kurdish clothing commonly involves belts that are very wide.

لباس مردانه بلوچی معمولا سفید رنگ است.

lebaas-e mardaaneye baloochi mamoolan sefid rang ast.

Baluchi's men clothes are usually white.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Bakhtiari dress

The Bakhtiari dress is a long colorful skirt with many layers, with a type of apron on the top of it. Bakhtiari women also wear long scarves and wraps.

2. Qoochani

Qoochani skirts are usually shorter and the shoes are usually suitable for long walks or climbs. They also use vests and head covers and use lots of bright colors and lines in the garments.

3. Qashqai dress

Qashqai women's dress include long skirts with brighter colors and lighter color shirts. They also wear scarves tightly closed at the bottom of the chin that may cover the shirt entirely.

4. Kurdish clothing

Kurdish clothing usually includes a head covering, a wide belt and baggy shirt, a skirt and trousers. Both men and women wear belts to give the outfit some shape.

5. Baluchi male clothing

The Baluchi male outfit consists of a long shirt with long sleeves, with pants in a matching color. They usually wear turbans or hats with it to protect against bad weather.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #11 Historical figures

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

11

PERSIAN

Who are the five most famous historical figures in Iran? .1

1.2 .1 داریوش کبیر

2.3 .2 آیت الله خمینی

3.4 .3 محمد مصدّق

4.5 .4 زکریای رازی

5.6 .5 امیرکبیر

ENGLISH

1. Who are the five most famous historical figures in Iran?

2. 1. Cyrus the Great

3. 2. Imam Khomeini

4. 3. Mohammed Mossadegh

5. 4. Zakariya Razi

6. 5. Amir Kabir

ROMANIZATION

1. Who are the five most famous historical figures in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. daryush-e kabir
3. 2. aayatollaah khomeyni
4. 3. Mohammad Mosaddeq
5. 4. Zakariy-ye Razi
6. 5. amir kabir

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
کوروش کبی	daryush-e kabir	Cyrus the Great	proper noun
امام خمینی	aayatollaah khomeyni	Imam Khomeini	proper noun
محمد مصدّق	Mohammad Mosaddeq	Mohammed Mossadegh	proper noun
زکریای رازی	Zakariy-ye Razi	Zakariya Razi	proper noun
امیرکبیر	amir kabir	Amir Kabir	proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>مقبره کوروش کبیر در استان شیراز واقع شده است.</p> <p>maqbare koorosh-e kabir dar ostaan-e shiraz vaaqe shode ast.</p> <p>The tomb of Cyrus the Great is located in Shiraz province.</p>	<p>خمینی اولین رهبر مذهبی بعد از انقلاب اسلامی بود.</p> <p>khomeini avvalin rahbar-e mazhabi ba'd az enqelaab-e eslaami bood.</p> <p>Khomeini was the first religious leader after the Islamic Revolution of 1979.</p>
--	--

مصدق به خاطر ملی کردن صنعت نفت
در ایران مشهور است.

mosadeq be khaater-e melli kardan-e san'at-e
naft dar iraan mashhoor ast.

Mossadegh is famous for the
nationalization of the Iranian oil industry.

رازی کاشف الکل است.

raazi kaashef-e alkol ast.

Razi was the discoverer of alcohol.

امیر کبیر در حمام باغ فین، واقع در کاشان ایران به قتل رسید.

amir kabir dar hammaam-e baaq-e fiin vaaq' dar kaashaan, iraan be qatl resid.

Amir Kabir was murdered in the bathroom of Fin Garden, which is located in Kashan, Iran.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Cyrus the Great

Cyrus the Great was the third king of the Persian Achaemenid Empire. He ruled the empire at its peak, when it included the Caucasus, Central Asia, the Aegean Islands, and northern Greece, parts of the Balkans, and North Africa.

2. Imam Khomeini

Ayatollah or Imam Khomeini, was an Iranian religious leader and politician, and leader of the 1979 Iranian Revolution, which saw the overthrow of Mohammad Reza Pahlavi, the Shah of Iran.

3. Mohammed Mossadegh

Mohammed Mossadegh was the democratically elected Prime Minister of Iran whose government was overthrown in a coup d'état in 1953. His most notable policy was the nationalization of the Iranian oil industry.

4. Zakariya Razi

Zakariya Razi was a prominent figure in the Islamic Golden Age as a physician, chemist, philosopher, and scholar. Numerous "firsts" in medical research, clinical care, and chemistry are attributed to him, including being the first to differentiate smallpox from measles.

5. Amir Kabir

Amir Kabir lived from 1807 to 1852, and was chief minister to Naser al-Din Shah Qajar, the Shah of Persia, for the first three years of his reign, and was one of the most capable and innovative figures to appear in the whole Qajar period.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #12 Animals

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

12

PERSIAN

What are the five most typical animals in Iran? .1

1.2 یوزپلنگ آسیایی

2.3 خرس بلوچستان

3.4 سیل دریای خزر

4.5 شغال زرد

5.6 لاکپشت سبز

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most typical animals in Iran?
2. 1. Asiatic cheetah
3. 2. Baluchistan bear
4. 3. Caspian seal
5. 4. Golden jackal
6. 5. Green sea turtle

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most typical animals in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. yuzpalang-e aasiaayi
3. 2. khers-e baluchestaan
4. 3. sil-e daryaa-ye khazar
5. 4. shoqaal-e zard
6. 5. laakposht-e sabz

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
یوزپلنگ آسیایی	yuzpalang-e aasiaayi	Asiatic cheetah	noun
خرس بلوچستان	khers-e baluchestaan	Baluchistan bear	noun
سیل دریای خزر	sil-e daryaa-ye khazar	Caspian seal	noun
شغال زرد	shoqaal-e zard	golden jackal	noun
لاکپشت سبز	laakposht-e sabz	green sea turtle	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>یوزپلنگ سریعترین حیوان روی زمین است.</p> <p>yoozpalang saritarin heivaan-e rooye zamin ast.</p> <p>The cheetah is the fastest animal on earth.</p>	<p>خرس بلوچستان یکی از نادرترین پستانداران موجود در جهان است.</p> <p>khers-e baluchestaan yeki az naadertarin pestaandaaraan-e mojud dar jahaan ast.</p> <p>The Baluchistan bear is one of the rarest mammals in the world.</p>
---	---

سپل‌های دریای خزر می‌توانند تا ۵۰ متر
در عمق آب نفوذ کنند.

silhaaye daryaaye khazar mitavaanand taa 50
metr dar omq-e aab nofooz konand.

Caspian seals can dive to a depth of 50
meters.

شغال زرد یک همه چیز خوار است.
shoqaal-e zard yek hame chiz khaar ast.

The golden jackal is an omnivore.

لاک پشت‌ها ممکن است تا ۸۰ سال عمر کنند.

laakposht haa momken ast taa 80 saal omr konand.

Turtles may live to eighty years.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Asiatic cheetah

The Asiatic cheetah, or Iranian cheetah, is a critically endangered species, and the world's last few are known to live mostly in Iran.

2. Baluchistan bear

The Baluchistan bear, also called the Pakistan black bear, is a black bear found in the Baluchistan Mountains of southern Pakistan and Iran.

3. Caspian seal

The Caspian seal is one of the smallest earless seal species and can be found only in the Caspian Sea.

4. Golden jackal

The golden jackal is a canid native to North Africa, Southeast Asia, the Middle East, Asia Minor, and parts of Europe.

5. Green sea turtle

The green sea turtle is a large-sized sea turtle on the critical list of endangered species.

There are populations throughout tropical and subtropical oceans.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #13 Plants

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

13

PERSIAN

What are the five most typical plants in Iran? .1

1.2 .1 سرو

2.3 .2 بلوط

3.4 .3 پسته

4.5 .4 خرما

5.6 .5 درخت حرا

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most typical plants in Iran?

2. 1. cypress

3. 2. oak

4. 3. pistachio

5. 4. date palm

6. 5. hara tree

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most typical plants in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. sarv
3. 2. baloot
4. 3. peste
5. 4. khormaa
6. 5. derakht-e haraa

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
سرو	sarv	cypress	noun
بلوط	baloot	oak	noun
پسته	peste	pistachio	noun
خرما	khormaa	date palm	noun
درخت حرا	derakht-e haraa	hara tree	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>سرو ایرانی نماد مقاومت است. sarv-e iraani namaad moqaavemat ast.</p> <p>Cypress symbolizes tolerance.</p>	<p>درخت بلوط می تواند ۵۰۰ تا ۲۰۰۰ سال عمر کند. derakht-e baloot mitavaanad 500 ta 2000 saal omr konad.</p> <p>Oaks can live from 500 to 2,000 years.</p>
--	--

ایران تولید کننده عمده پسته در جهان
می باشد.

iraan tolid konande-ye omdeye peste dar jahaan
mibaashad.

Iran is a major producer of pistachios in
the world.

ایرانی ها روزه خود را در رمضان با
خرما باز می کنند.

iraanihaa roozeye khod raa dar ramezaan baa
khormaa baaz mikonand.

Iranians open their fast during Ramadan
with dates.

ارتفاع درخت حرا به حدود ۸ متر می رسد.

ertefaa'-e derakht-e haraa be hodood-e 8 metr miresad.

The height of hara trees may be up to eight meters.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Cypress

Cypress can be found in many famous Persian gardens, such as Fin Garden, Mahaan, and Dowlat-Abad. The oldest living cypress is the Sarv-e Abarkuh in Yazd Province, which is approximately 4,000 years old.

2. Oak

In Iran, oaks mainly grow on the Zagros Mountains. The provinces of Kordestan, Fars, Lorestan, and Mazandaran are known to have the most beautiful oak forests in the world.

3. Pistachio

Iran is one of the major producers of pistachios. It's commonly used to make the traditional Ajil—a mix of nuts, seeds, and dried fruits—for Iranian ceremonies.

4. Date palm

Date palms are cultivated for their sweet edible fruit. Eating dates in Iran is very popular in Ramadan and at Iranian funerals. People also eat dates with tea every day.

5. Hara tree

The hara tree is also known as grey mangrove. It's mainly found in the Mangrove forests of Qeshm on the southern coast of Iran. This protected forest is a habitat for many kinds of animals.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #14 Geographical features

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

14

PERSIAN

What are the five most well-known geographical features in Iran? .1

1.2 .1 دشت لوت

2.3 .2 خلیج فارس

3.4 .3 دماوند

4.5 .4 توچال

5.6 .5 سبلان

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most well-known geographical features in Iran?

2. 1. Lut desert

3. 2. Persian Gulf

4. 3. Mount Damavand

5. 4. Mount Tochal

6. 5. Mount Sabalan

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most well-known geographical features in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. dasht-e loot
3. 2. khalij-e faars
4. 3. Damaavand
5. 4. Tochaal
6. 5. Sabalaan

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
دشت لوت	dasht-e loot	Lut desert	proper noun
خلیج فارس	khalij-e faars	Persian Gulf	proper noun
دماوند	Damaavand	Mount Damavand	proper noun
توچال	Tochaal	Mount Tochal	proper noun
سبلان	Sabalaan	Mount Sabalan	proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>دشت لوت یک کویر نمک بزرگ در ایران و بیست و پنجمین دشت بزرگ در دنیا است.</p> <p>dasht-e loot yek kavir-e namak-e bozorg dar iraan va bist o panjomin dasht-e bozorg dar donyaa ast.</p> <p>The Lut Desert is a large salt desert in Iran and is the world's 25th largest desert.</p>	<p>خلیج فارس بین ایران و شبه جزیره عربستان واقع شده است.</p> <p>khalij-e faars bein-e iraan va shebhe jazireye arabestaan vaaqe shode ast.</p> <p>The Persian Gulf is located between Iran and the Arabian Peninsula.</p>
--	---

کوه دماوند در شمال ایران واقع شده است.

kooh-e damaavand dar shomaal-e iraan vaaghe' shode ast.

Mount Damavand is located in the north of Iran.

توچال کوهی در رشته کوه البرز است.
tochaal koohi dar reshte kooh-e alborz ast.

Mount Tochal is a mountain in the Alborz range.

سبلان در شمال غربی ایران قرار گرفته است.

sabalaan dar shomaal-e gharbi-ye iraan gharaar gerefteh ast.

Sabalan is located in northwestern Iran.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Lut desert

The Lut Desert is a large salt desert located in Kerman Province. It has seen temperatures as high as 159 degrees Fahrenheit, making it one of the hottest and driest places in the world.

2. Persian Gulf

The Persian Gulf is an extension of the Indian Ocean, located between Iran and the Arabian Peninsula. During the 1980-1988 Iran-Iraq War, the Persian Gulf was a focus of hostilities.

3. Mount Damavand

Mount Damavand is a volcano and the highest peak in Iran. It also has thermal springs, and is depicted on the reverse side of the Iranian 10,000 rial banknote.

4. Mount Tochal

Mount Tochal is a mountain in the Alborz range near metropolitan Tehran. The highest peak has an elevation of 3,964 meters. Skiing is possible eight months of the year, making it a popular ski resort for people from Tehran.

5. Mount Sabalan

Sabalan is an inactive volcano in northwestern Iran. It's the third highest mountain in the country. Some believe that Mount Sabalan was the place where the prophet Zoroaster meditated for some years.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #15 Cities

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

15

PERSIAN

What are the five most popular cities in Iran? .1

1. تهران .2

2. مشهد .3

3. تبریز .4

4. اصفهان .5

5. شیراز .6

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular cities in Iran?

2. 1. Tehran

3. 2. Mashhad

4. 3. Tabriz

5. 4. Isfahan

6. 5. Shiraz

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most popular cities in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. Tehraan
3. 2. Mashhad
4. 3. Tabriz
5. 4. Esfahaan
6. 5. Shiraaz

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
تهران	Tehraan	Tehran	proper noun
مشهد	Mashhad	Mashhad	proper noun
تبریز	Tabriz	Tabriz	proper noun
اصفهان	Esfahaan	Isfahan	proper noun
شیراز	Shiraaz	Shiraz	proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>تهران پایتخت ایران و استان تهران است. tehraan paaytakht-e iraan va ostaan-e tehraan ast.</p> <p>Tehran is the capital of Iran and Tehran Province.</p>	<p>مشهد دومین شهر بزرگ مذهبی در جهان است. Mashhad dovomin shahr-e bozorg-e mazhabi dar jahaan ast.</p> <p>Mashhad is the second largest holy city in the world.</p>
---	---

<p>زبان غالب گفتاری در تبریز آذری است. zabaan-e qaaleb-e goftaari dar tabriz aazarbaaijaani ast.</p> <p>The predominant language spoken in Tabriz is Azeri.</p>	<p>اصفهان در مرکز کشور واقع شده است. esfehaan dar markaz-e keshvar vaghe' shode ast.</p> <p>Isfahan is located in the center of the country.</p>
---	--

شیراز به عنوان شهر شعر، ادبیات، شراب و گل شناخته شده است.
Shiraaaz be onvaan-e shahr-e she'r, adabiaat, sharaab va gol shenaakhte shode ast.

Shiraz is known as the city of poets, literature, wine, and flowers.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Tehran

Tehran is Iran's largest city, and the capital of Iran and Tehran Province. With a population of around 14 million in the wider metropolitan area, it's also the largest city in Western Asia.

2. Mashhad

Mashhad is the capital of Razavi Khorasan Province and the second most populous city in Iran. It's located close to the borders of Afghanistan and Turkmenistan. In ancient times, it was a major oasis along the Silk Road.

3. Tabriz

Tabriz is the fourth largest city in Iran, and capital of East Azerbaijan Province. Tabriz sits between mountains and rivers, making it a fertile area, but one that is prone to earthquakes.

4. Isfahan

Isfahan is the capital of Isfahan Province in central Iran. It's located on the main north-south and east-west routes crossing the country. It flourished in the sixteenth century under the Safavid dynasty, when it was the capital of Persia.

5. Shiraz

Shiraz is the fifth most populous city in Iran and the capital of Fars Province. It is one of the oldest cities of ancient Persia, and was the capital of old Persia in the eighteenth century.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #16 Sports

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

16

PERSIAN

What are the five most popular sports in Iran? .1

1. ورزش باستانی .2

2. شطرنج .3

3. والیبال .4

4. فوتبال .5

5. کشتی .6

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular sports in Iran?

2. 1. Bastani sport

3. 2. Chess

4. 3. Volleyball

5. 4. Soccer

6. 5. Wrestling

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most popular sports in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. varzesh-e bastani
3. 2. shatranj
4. 3. vaalibaal
5. 4. footbaal
6. 5. koshti

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
ورزش باستانی	varzesh-e bastani	Bastani sport	noun
شطرنج	shatranj	chess	noun
والیبال	vaalibaal	volleyball	noun
فوتبال	footbaal	football or soccer	noun
کشتی	koshti	wrestling	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>محلّی که در آن به ورزش باستانی می‌پردازند "زورخانه" نام دارد.</p> <p>mahali ke dar aan be varzesh-e baastaani mipardaazand zoorkhaane naam daarad.</p> <p>The place where people do the traditional style of wrestling is called "Zoorkhaneh."</p>	<p>شطرنج یک بازی فکری به حساب می‌آید.</p> <p>shatranj yek baazi-e fekri be hesaab miaayad.</p> <p>Chess is considered to be a game of the mind.</p>
---	---

تیم ملی والیبال ایران یکی از پنج تیم
برتر جهان است.

tim-e melli-e vaalibaal-e iraan yeki az panj tim-e
bartar-e jahaan ast.

The Iran national volleyball team is one of
the five best teams in the world.

فوتبال یکی از محبوبترین ورزش ها در
میان ایرانیان است.

footbaal yeki az mahboobtarin varzeshhaa dar
miaan-e iraniaan ast.

Soccer is one of the most popular sports
among Iranians.

کشتی یکی از قدیمی ترین ورزش های دنیا است.

koshti yeki az qadimitarin varzeshhaaye donyaa ast.

Wrestling is one the most ancient sports in the world.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Bastani sport

Bastani sport, or "ancient sport," is a traditional style of wrestling from Iran. It combines elements of pre-Islamic Iranian culture with the spirituality of Sufism. Wrestlers are expected to be pure and truthful in addition to physically strong.

2. Chess

Chess is one of the most popular games in Iran. The origin of chess is disputed, but there is some evidence that chess originated in Persia, and later found its way to India.

3. Volleyball

Iran has one of the strongest volleyball teams in the world and the Iranian Youth and Junior national teams are also among the top three in the world.

4. Soccer

Soccer in Iran is possibly the most popular sport, and it's been part of life for Iranians for many decades now. Soccer was introduced to Iran by the British in 1898.

5. Wrestling

Iranian wrestling, known as "koshti" in Persian, has been practiced since ancient times throughout Iran. There are two main variations of this sport - one in which the objective is to lift or throw the opponent, and one where the goal is to touch a part of the opponent's body to the ground.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #17

Tourist attractions and places

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

17

PERSIAN

What are the five most popular tourist attractions in Iran? .1

1. پل خواجه .2

2. کلیسای وانک .3

3. باغ پرندگان .4

4. کوه آتشفشان .5

5. میدان نقش جهان .6

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular tourist attractions in Iran?

2. 1. Khaju Bridge

3. 2. Vank Cathedral

4. 3. Birds Garden

5. 4. Mount Atashgah

6. 5. Naqsh-e Jahan square

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most popular tourist attractions in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. pol-e khaajoo
3. 2. kelisaaye vaank
4. 3. baaq-e parandegaan
5. 4. kooh-e aatashgaah
6. 5. meidaan-e naqsh-e jahaan

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
پل خواجه	pol-e khaajoo	Khaju Bridge	proper noun
کلیسای وانک	kelisaaye vaank	Vank Cathedral	proper noun
باغ پرندگان	baaq-e parandegaan	Birds Garden	proper noun
کوه آتشفگاه	kooh-e aatashgaah	Mount Atashgah	proper noun
میدان نقش جهان	meidaan-e naqsh-e jahaan	Naqsh-e Jahan square	proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>پل خواجه یکی از بهترین نمونه های معماری ایرانی است.</p> <p>pol-e khajoo yeki az behtarin nemooneh haaye me'maari-e iraani ast.</p> <p>Khaju Bridge is one of the finest examples of Persian architecture.</p>	<p>کلیسای وانک یکی از اولین کلیساهای اصفهان است.</p> <p>kelisaaye vaank yeki az avvalin kelisaahaaye esfehaan ast.</p> <p>Vank Cathedral was one of the first churches in Isfahan.</p>
--	--

باغ پرندگان یک محل ایده آل برای کودکان برای دیدن انواع پرندگان است.

baaq-e parandegaan yek mahal-e ideaal baraaye koodakaan baraaye didan-e anvaa-e parandegaan ast.

Birds Garden is an ideal place for children to see many varieties of birds.

آتشگاه نام کوهی در غرب اصفهان و در نزدیکی زاینده رود است.

aatashgaah naam-e koohi dar qarb-e esfahaan va dar nazdiki-e zaayanderood ast.

Atashgah is a mountain west of Isfahan, near the Zayandeh River.

میدان نقش جهان با ساختمان هایی از دوره صفویه احاطه شده است.

meidaan-e naqsh-e jahaan baa saakhtemaanhaayi az doreye safavie ehaate shode ast.

Naqsh-e Jahan square is surrounded by buildings from the Safavid era.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Khaju Bridge

Khaju Bridge is the finest bridge in the province of Isfahan, and was built around the year 1650 C.E. Although it functions architecturally as a bridge, it also served as a place for public meetings.

2. Vank Cathedral

Vank Cathedral was one of the first churches in Isfahan, established by Armenian deportees. The cathedral shows a combination of building styles that reflects an eclectic mix of foreign influences.

3. Birds Garden

Birds Garden was founded in 1998 by the Isfahan Municipality. It's located in the Najvan Park area, along the Zayandeh Rood River. The garden has a vast variety of birds, both local and from other countries.

4. Mount Atashgah

Atashgah is a mountain west of Isfahan. It's named after the ruins of a Sassanid-era complex called "Fire temple of Isfahan" located on top of it. It includes a tower-like structure, and fire-temples that housed sacred fires.

5. Naqsh-e Jahan square

Naqsh-e Jahan square was built by Shah Abbas in the 17th century. Literally translated as "Image of the World Square," it is one of UNESCO's World Heritage Sites. The square is surrounded by monumental buildings, including mosques and a palace.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #18

Common things in the homes

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

18

PERSIAN

What are the five most common things found in a Persian home? .1

1. فرش .2

2. کرسی .3

3. یخچال .4

4. تلویزیون .5

5. پرده .6

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most common things found in a Persian home?

2. 1. carpet

3. 2. korsi

4. 3. refrigerator

5. 4. television

6. 5. curtain

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most common things found in a Persian home?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. farsh
3. 2. Korsi
4. 3. yakhchaal
5. 4. television
6. 5. parde

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
فرش	farsh	carpet	noun
کرسی	korsi	korsi	noun
یخچال	yakhchaal	refrigerator	noun
تلویزیون	televizion	television	noun
پرده	parde	curtain	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>فرش ایرانی بخش مهمی از فرهنگ و هنر ایران است.</p> <p>farsh-e irानी bakhsh-e mohemi az farhang va honar-e iraan ast.</p> <p>The Persian carpet is an essential part of Persian art and culture.</p>	<p>کرسی میز مخصوصی است که در داخل خانه‌ها در زمستان مورد استفاده قرار می‌گرفته است.</p> <p>korsi miz-e makhsoosi ast ke dar daakhel-e khaaneha dar zemestaan mored-e estefaade qaraar migerefte ast.</p> <p>Korsi is a special table that has been used inside houses during the winter.</p>
---	--

یخچال بخش بسیار مهمی از مدل زندگی زنان ایرانی به حساب میآید.

yakhchaal bakhsh-e besiaar mohemmi az model-e zendegi-e zanaan-e irani be hesaab miaayad.

A refrigerator is considered to be a very important part of women's lifestyles in Iran.

خانواده‌های ایرانی وقت زیادی را برای دیدن تلویزیون با همدیگر سپری میکنند.

khaanevaadehaaye iraani vaqt-e ziaadi ra baraaye didan-e televizion ba hamdigar separi mikonand.

Iranian families spend a large amount of time watching TV together.

طرح‌های پرده در خانه‌های ایرانی بسیار زیبا هستند.

tarh haaye parde dar khaanehaaye iraani besiaar zibaa hastand.

Curtain designs in Iranian houses are very beautiful.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Carpet

Carpet-weaving is one of the most developed forms of Persian art, and goes back to ancient Persia. Depending on the size of the carpet, it may take anywhere from a few months to a few years to finish weaving one.

2. Korsi

Korsi is low table, with a heater underneath it and blankets over it. Families or group of friends sit on the floor around the korsi during meals and special events.

3. Refrigerator

Iranian housewives like large refrigerators. Usually each house has two refrigerators—one is only a refrigerator, and the second is a freezer. Iranians buy large amounts of fresh vegetables, cut them into pieces and preserve them in the freezer.

4. Television

Nowadays all Iranian homes have at least one TV set, and Iranian families spend a lot of time watching it together.

5.

Curtain

Iranians consider curtains to be an ornamental part of the dining room and not just a cloth to prevent outside light from shining into the home.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #19 Commonly used medicine and drugs

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

19

PERSIAN

What are the five most commonly used medicine and drugs in Iran? .1

1.2 .1 استامینوفن

2.3 .2 گل گاوزبان

3.4 .3 عرق بهار نارنج

4.5 .4 گلاب

5.6 .5 عرق نعناع

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most commonly used medicine and drugs in Iran?

2. 1. acetaminophen

3. 2. borage

4. 3. Petitgrain bigarade oil

5. 4. rose water

6. 5. Peppermint Distillate

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most commonly used medicine and drugs in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. astaaminofen
3. 2. gol gaav zabaan
4. 3. araq -e bahaar naarenj
5. 4. golaab
6. 5. araq nanaa

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
استامینوفن	astaaminofen	acetaminophen	noun
گل گاوزبان	gol gaav zabaan	borage	noun
عرق بهار نارنج	araq -e bahaar naarenj	Petitgrain bigarade oil	phrase
گلاب	golaab	rose water	noun
عرق نعناع	araq nanaa	peppermint distillate	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>استامینوفن یک داروی متداول جهت کاهش تب است که در ایران استفاده می شود.</p> <p>asetaminofen yek daarooeye motadaavel jahat-e kaاهش-e tab ast ke dar iraan estefaade mishavad.</p> <p>Acetaminophen is a commonly used drug in Iran for reducing fever.</p>	<p>گل گاوزبان یک گیاه دارویی معروف در ایران می باشد.</p> <p>gol-e gaav zabaan yek giah darooyi-e maroof dar iran mibashad.</p> <p>Borage is a famous medicinal plant in Iran.</p>
--	---

عرق بهار نارنج آرامش بخش است و
اضطراب را از بین می برد.

aragh-e bahaar naarenj aaraamesh bakhsh ast
va ezteraab raa az bein mibarad.

Petitgrain Bigarade Oil is soothing and
eliminates anxiety.

گلاب دارای رایحه ای خوش می باشد که
در آشپزی ایرانی بسیار مورد استفاده
قرار می گیرد.

golaab daaraaye raayehe'i khosh mibaashad ke
dar aashpazi-e iraani besyaar mored-e estefaade
qaraar migirad.

Rose water has a very distinctive flavor
and is used heavily in Persian cuisine.

عرق نعناع می تواند باعث کاهش درد معده شود.

araq na'naa mitavaanad baaes-e kaahesh-e dard-e me'de shavad.

Peppermint distillate can ease stomach aches.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Acetaminophen

Acetaminophen is used to relieve pain and reduce fever. It's a very common drug prescribed by doctors in Iran when people have fevers.

2. Borage

Borage is an herb, originally native to the Mediterranean region. Iranians use it in traditional medicine for infectious diseases and the flu. Tea made from the dried flowers is a traditional calming drink in Iran.

3. Petitgrain bigarade oil

Petitgrain Bigarade Oil is distilled from the leaves of the bitter orange tree. It is used for skin care, and to relieve anxiety and stress.

4. Rose water

This oil is extracted from rose petals using steam. Although it can be used in making perfumes, it also has therapeutic properties and is used to treat depression and also fight bacteria and viruses.

5. Peppermint distillate

Iranians use peppermint distillate as a medicine. It's used for the common cold, mouth and throat inflammation, sinus and respiratory infections and digestive problems.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #20 Natural disasters

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

20

PERSIAN

What are the five most common natural disasters in Iran? .1

1.2 .1 زلزله

2.3 .2 سيل

3.4 .3 خشکسالی

4.5 .4 طوفان شن

5.6 .5 آتشفشان

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most common natural disasters in Iran?

2. 1. earthquake

3. 2. flood

4. 3. drought

5. 4. sand storm

6. 5. volcano

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most common natural disasters in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. zelzele
3. 2. seil
4. 3. khoshksaali
5. 4. toofaan-e shen
6. 5. aatashfshaan

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
زلزله	zelzele	earthquake	noun
سیل	seil	flood	noun
خشکسالی	khoshksaali	drought	noun
طوفان شن	toofaan-e shen	sand storm	noun
آتشفشان	aatashfshaan	volcano	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>ایران کشوری زلزله خیز است. iraan keshvari zelzeleh khiz ast.</p> <p>Iran experiences many earthquakes.</p>	<p>یکی از معروفترین سیل ها در ایران در سال ۱۹۸۷ در میدان تجریش تهران اتفاق افتاد. yeki az ma'erooftarin seil haa dar iraan dar saal-e 1987 dar meidaan-e tajrish-e tehran ettefaagh oftaad.</p> <p>One of the most famous floods happened at Tajrish square in Tehran in 1987.</p>
---	--

در بسیاری از نواحی ایران، خشکسالی یک تهدید حتمی و اجتناب ناپذیرمی باشد.
dar besyaari az navaahiye iraan, khoshksaali yek tahdid-e hatmi va ejtenaab naapazir mibaashad.

Drought is a real threat and unavoidable in many parts of Iran.

طوفان شن یکی از بزرگترین معضلات استان سیستان و بلوچستان است.
toofaan-e shen yeki az bozorgtarin mozalaat-e ostaan sistaan o baluchestaaan ast.

Sand storms are one of the biggest problems in Sistan and Baluchestan provinces.

در ایران شش کوه آتشفشانی وجود دارد که تعدادی از آن ها فعال هستند.
dar iraan shesh kooch-e aatashfashaani vojood daarad ke te'daadi az aanhaa fa'aal hastand.

Iran has six volcanoes and some of them are active.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Earthquake

Iran is one of the countries with the most earthquake activity. The 2013 Sistan and Baluchestan earthquake, which was a magnitude 7.7, was the strongest of the 21st century.

2. Flood

Although Iran's average rainfall is only ten inches, the country's geographical location means that even light rains trigger floods. Inadequate building safety and unchecked construction along river banks has led to an increase in damage from flooding.

3. Drought

Precipitation in Iran is less than one third of the global average precipitation, and the rainfall distribution over the country is uneven. In Iran, droughts often cause severe damage to the agricultural and industrial sectors.

4. Sand storm

Sand storms form when strong winds blow loose sand and dirt away. In recent years, sand storms coming from neighboring western countries have increased, causing economic problems in western and central Iran.

5. Volcano

Iran has some active volcanoes, most notably Mount Damavand, in Alborz range. It is also the highest volcano in Asia and the highest mountain in the Middle East.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #21

Frequently used modes of transportation

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

21

PERSIAN

What are the five most frequently used modes of transportation in Iran? .1

1. مترو .2

2. تاکسی .3

3. اتوبوس .4

4. آژانس .5

5. قطار .6

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most frequently used modes of transportation in Iran?
2. 1. subway
3. 2. taxi
4. 3. bus
5. 4. car agency
6. 5. train

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most frequently used modes of transportation in Iran?
2. 1. metro
3. 2. taaksi
4. 3. otoboos
5. 4. aazhaans
6. 5. qataar

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
مترو	metro	subway	noun
تاکسی	taaksi	taxi	noun
اتوبوس	otoboos	bus	noun
آژانس	aazhaans	car agency	noun
قطار	qataar	train	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

امروزه افراد زیادی در تهران برای رفتن به محل کار خود از مترو استفاده می کنند.

emrooze afraad-e ziaadi dar tehraan baraaye raftan be mahall-e kaar-e khod az metro estefaade mikonand.

Nowadays many people in Tehran are using the subway to travel to their workplace.

در بیشتر شهرهای ایران، تاکسی‌ها با رنگ زرد یا نارنجی مشخص شده‌اند.

dar bishtar-e shahrhaaye iraan, taaksihaa baa rang-e zard yaa naarenji moshakkhas shode and.

In most of the cities in Iran, taxicabs are colored yellow or orange.

اتوبوس یک وسیله نقلیه عمومی متداول
در شهرها است.

otoboos yek vasileye naqlieye omoomi-e
motadaavel dar shahrhaa ast.

Buses are common public transportation
vehicles in the cities.

آژانس ها خدمتی مانند اجاره ماشین
همراه با راننده به مردم ارائه می دهند.

aazhaanshaa khedmati maanand-e ejaare
maashin be hamraah-e raanande be mardom
eraae midahand.

Car agencies serve people by renting cars
with a driver.

قطار برای سفر بین شهرها در ایران استفاده می شود.

qataar baraaye safar bein-e shahrhaa dar iraan estefaade mishavad.

Trains are used for traveling between the cities in Iran.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Subway

Tehran subway has five lines operating currently. Besides Tehran, only Mashhad has a subway. The ticket price of the Tehran Metro is 4500 Iranian Rials, or about 20 cents US, for each journey.

2. Taxi

Iran has two types of taxi, the governmental taxis which are orange, or self-employed taxis with no special color. Some areas inside the city have taxis working on a special route with decided prices, called "Line Taxis."

3. Bus

City bus tickets can be bought at kiosks at major transport intersections. In Iranian buses, there is gender segregation, where women ride in the back and men in front.

4. Car agency

Car agencies offer car rentals that include a driver. These are usually arranged by telephone. The customer may ask for a short rental or they may ask for a whole day rental.

5. Train

The Railway of the Islamic Republic of Iran, or Raja, started in 1996 as an independent governmental company. It has national and international destinations, and around 29 million passengers are transported each year.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #22 Shops or services in town

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

22

PERSIAN

What are the five most popular shops and services in Iran? .1

1.2. خواروبار فروشی

2.3. نانوایی

3.4. فروشگاه میوه و سبزی

4.5. فروشگاه گوشت

5.6. فروشگاه آجیل و خشکبار

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular shops and services in Iran?

2. 1. grocery store

3. 2. bakery

4. 3. fruit and vegetable shop

5. 4. meat shop

6. 5. ajil and dried fruits shop

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most popular shops and services in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. khaar-o baar forooshi
3. 2. naanvaaii
4. 3. forooshgaah-e miveh va sabzi
5. 4. forooshgaah-e goosht
6. 5. forooshgaah-e aajil va khoshkbaar

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
خواروبار فروشی	khaar-o baar forooshi	grocery store	noun
نانوایی	naanvaaii	bakery	noun
فروشگاه میوه و سبزی	forooshgaah-e miveh va sabzi	fruit and vegetable shop	phrase
فروشگاه گوشت	forooshgaah-e goosht	meat shop	phrase
فروشگاه آجیل و خشکبار	forooshgaah-e aajil va khoshkbaar	ajil and dried fruits shop	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>مردم برای خریدهای روزمره خود خواروبار فروشی های کوچک نزدیک محل سکونتشان را به فروشگاههای بزرگ ترجیح می دهند.</p> <p>mardom baraaye kharidhaaye roozmareye khod khaar o baar forooshihaaye koochak-e nazdik-e mahal-e sokoonaateshaan raa be forooshgaahhaaye bozorg tarjih midahand.</p> <p>People prefer to buy from small grocery shops near their houses rather than big supermarkets.</p>	<p>نانوایی مکانی است برای تهیه نان تازه که معمولا در نزدیکی همه مناطق مسکونی وجود دارد.</p> <p>naanvaayi makaani ast baraaye tahie naan-e taaze ke ma'moolan dar nazdiki-e hameye manaateq-e maskooni vojood daarad.</p> <p>A bakery is a place for fresh-baked bread that is usually near residential areas.</p>
<p>تنها میوه و سبزی در یک فروشگاه میوه و سبزی پیدا میشود.</p> <p>tanhaa miveh va sabzi dar yek forooshgaah-e miveh o sabzi peydaa mishavad.</p> <p>Only fruits and vegetables are found in the fruit and vegetable shop.</p>	<p>مردم معمولا مقادیر زیادی گوشت گاو یا گوسفند از فروشگاههای گوشت خریداری کرده و در فریزر نگهداری می کنند.</p> <p>mardom ma'moolan maqaadir-e ziaadi goosht-e gaav yaa goosfand az forooshgaahhaaye goosht kharidaari karde va dar frizer negahdaari mikonand.</p> <p>People usually purchase large amounts of beef or lamb from meat shops and keep them in the freezer.</p>

مردم ایران برای خریدن آجیل برای مناسبتهای مختلف به فروشگاههای آجیل و خشکبار می روند.

mardom-e iraan baraaye kharidan-e aajil baraaye monaasebathaaye mokhtalef be forooshgaahhaaye aajil va khoshkbaar miravand.

Iranian people go to aajil and dried fruit shops to buy aajil for different occasions.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Grocery store

These are like small supermarkets selling food including rice, dairy products, juices, bread, water, ice cream, and pickles. They can be found near every residential area, because people buy their daily needs there.

2. Bakery

There are many types of breads in Iranian bakeries such as Lavash, Sangak, Taftoon, and Barbari. Iranians like fresh and hot bread for their breakfast, so they prefer to buy it in bakeries rather than pre-packaged and pre-sliced.

3. Fruit and vegetable shop

These shops sell only fruits and vegetables. Fresh fruit is delivered every morning which causes these shops to become very crowded. The sellers don't allow people to pick out the fruits themselves since the prices are cheap and the quality is mixed.

4. Meat shop

These shops are the most ancient and traditional way of selling meat. Although now most people prefer to buy their meat from big supermarkets, there are still many meat shops around Iranian cities.

5. Ajil and dried fruits shop

These stores sell dried fruits and ajil. Ajil is an assortment of nuts, usually pistachios, almonds, and hazelnuts, with roasted chickpeas, seeds, raisins, and other dried fruits such as apricots, sour cherries, mulberries, and figs.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #23 Popular chain stores

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

23

PERSIAN

What are the five most popular chain stores in Iran? .1

1.2 .1 شهروند

2.3 .2 رستوران بوف

3.4 .3 رفاه

4.5 .4 هاكوپيان

5.6 .5 ساندويچ هايدا

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular chain stores in Iran?

2. 1. Shahrvand

3. 2. Boof Restaurant

4. 3. Refah

5. 4. Hacopian

6. 5. Haida Sandwich

ROMANIZATION

1. What are the five most popular chain stores in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. shahrvand
3. 2. restoraan-e boof
4. 3. refaah
5. 4. hakoopiaan
6. 5. saandevich-e haaida

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
شهروند	shahrvand	Shahrvand	proper noun
رستوران بوف	restoraan-e boof	Boof Restaurant	proper noun
رفاه	refaah	Refah	proper noun
هاکوپیان	hakoopiaan	Hacoupian	proper noun
ساندویچ هایدا	saandevich-e haaida	Haida Sandwich	proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>شهروند شعبه های بسیاری در نقاط مختلف تهران دارد.</p> <p>shahrvand sho'beh haaye besiaari dar noghaat-e mokhtalef-e tehraan daarad.</p> <p>Sharvand has many branches in different locations in Tehran.</p>	<p>بوف یکی از محبوبترین رستوران های فست فود در ایران است.</p> <p>boof yeki az mahboobtarin restooraan haaye fast food dar iraan ast.</p> <p>Boof is one of the most popular fast food restaurants in Iran.</p>
---	--

شعار شرکت رفاه "کیفیت بهتر، قیمت های پایین تر" است.

shoaaar-e sherkat-e refaah "keifiyat-e behtar, qeimathaaye paaintar" ast.

The company slogan of Refah is "Better quality, lower prices".

هاکوپیان یک فروشگاه لباس مردانه است.

haakoopian yek forooshgaah-e lebaas-e mardaane ast.

Hacoupian is a menswear store.

ساندویچ هایدا در آمریکا و کانادا نیز شعبه دارد.

saandevich-e haaida dar aamrikaa va kaanaadaa niz shobe daarad.

Haida Sandwich also has branches in the US and Canada.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Shahrvand

Shahrvand Chain Stores is a supermarket chain with many branches around Tehran. It has great importance in the Iranian retail industry.

2. Boof Restaurant

Boof is a fast food restaurant that started in 1995. It's one of the leading fast food restaurants with 50 branches across Iran. Its menu includes mainly burgers, fried chicken, and pizza.

3. Refah

Refah Chain Stores is an Iranian supermarket chain based in Tehran, with over 160 branches.

4. Hacoupian

Hacoupian is a retail clothing store, founded by Sombat Hacoupian in 1970. This store primarily sells men's wear, and has 300,000 permanent subscribers to its catalog in Iran and abroad.

5. Haida Sandwich

Haida is the biggest fast food franchise in the Middle East. They mainly offer cold and hot sandwiches.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #24 Artists and musicians

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

24

PERSIAN

Who are the five most well-known artists and musicians in Iran? .1

1. شجریان .2

2. کمال الملک .3

3. فریبرز لاجینی .4

4. حسین تهرانی .5

5. بنان .6

ENGLISH

1. Who are the five most well-known artists and musicians in Iran?

2. 1. Shajarian

3. 2. Kamal-ol-Molk

4. 3. Fariborz Lachini

5. 4. Hossein Tehrani

6. 5. Banan

ROMANIZATION

1. Who are the five most well-known artists and musicians in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. shajariaan
3. 2. Kamal-ol-molk
4. 3. Fariborz laachini
5. 4. hosein tehraani
6. 5. banaan

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
شجریان	shajariaan	Shajarian	proper noun
کمال الملک	Kamal-ol-molk	Kamal-ol-Molk	proper noun
فریبرز لاجینی	Fariborz laachini	Fariborz Lachini	proper noun
حسین تهرانی	hosein tehraani	Hossein Tehrani	proper noun
بنان	banaan	Banan	proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>شجریان به عنوان بزرگترین استاد زنده ایران در موسیقی سنتی اصیل ایرانی شناخته می شود.</p> <p>shajariaan be onvaan-e bozorgtarin ostaad-e zende iraan dar moosiqi-e sonaati shenaakhte mishavad.</p> <p>Shajarian has been called Iran's greatest living master of traditional Persian music.</p>	<p>کمال الملک سبک جدیدی در هنر ایران پایه گذاری کرد.</p> <p>kamaal olmolk sabk-e jadidi dar honar-e iraan paayegozaari kard.</p> <p>Kamal-ol-Molk founded a new style in Iranian art.</p>
---	---

<p>فریبرز لاجینی سازنده پاییز طلایی، یکی از پرفروش ترین کارها در ایران است. fariborz-e laachini saazandeye paaiz-e talaayi, yeki az porforooshtarin kaarhaa dar iraan ast.</p> <p>Fariborz lachini was the creator of Golden Autumn, one the best selling works in Iran.</p>	<p>حسین تهرانی یکی از آهنگسازان و نوازندگان تنبک ایرانی می باشد. Hossein Tehraani az aahangsaazaan va navaazandegaan-e tonbak-e iraani mibaashad.</p> <p>Hossein Tehrani was an Iranian musician and tonbak player.</p>
--	---

بنان یکی از آهنگسازان و خواننده های محبوب ایرانی است.

Banaan yeki az aahangsaazaan va khaanandehaaye mahboob-e iraani ast.

Banan is one of the most popular Iranian musicians and singers.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Shajarian

Mohammad-Reza Shajarian is an Iranian classical singer, composer, and master of Persian music. Shajarian has even invented many new classical Iranian musical instruments.

2. Kamal-ol-Molk

Kamal-ol-Molk was an Iranian painter. He was born in 1848 in Kashan, to a family heavily involved in art. He expanded the art of painting in Iran and opened up new horizons to the painters who followed him.

3. Fariborz Lachini

Fariborz Lachini is a composer of film scores. Before the Islamic Revolution, he also created some pop music. After the Islamic Revolution he moved to Paris to study music. When he returned home, he created Golden Autumn, one of the bestselling solo piano albums in Iran.

4. Hossein Tehrani

Hossein Tehrani was an Iranian musician and played a type of Persian drum called tonbak. Hossein innovated how it is played, which involved the tonbak being played in harmony with the saying of Persian phrases.

5. Banan

Banan was an Iranian musician and singer. He was part of the Iranian National Music Association. After, he joined the orchestra of the pianist Javaad Maroufi, and became the lead vocalist.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Persian Vocabulary #25 Writers

CONTENTS

- 2 Persian
- 2 English
- 2 Romanization
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

25

PERSIAN

Who are the five most well-known writers in Iran? .1

1.2 .1. علی محمد افغانی

2.3 .2. صادق هدایت

3.4 .3. بزرگ علوی

4.5 .4. سیمین دانشور

5.6 .5. محمدعلی جمالزاده

ENGLISH

1. Who are the five most well-known writers in Iran?

2. 1. Ali Mohammad Afghani

3. 2. Sadegh Hedayat

4. 3. Bozorg Alavi

5. 4. Simin Daneshvar

6. 5. Mohammad-Ali Jamalzadeh

ROMANIZATION

1. Who are the five most well-known writers in Iran?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. Ali Mohammad Afqaani
3. 2. saadeq hedaayat
4. 3. Bozorg-e Alavi
5. 4. Simin Daaneshvar
6. 5. Mohammad-Ali Jamaalzaade

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
علی محمد افغانی	Ali Mohammad Afqaani	Ali Mohammad Afghani	proper noun
صادق هدایت	saadeq hedaayat	Sadegh Hedayat	proper noun
بزرگ علوی	Bozorg-e Alavi	Bozorg Alavi	proper noun
سیمین دانشور	Simin Daaneshvar	Simin Daneshvar	proper noun
محمد علی جمالزاده	Mohammad-Ali Jamaalzaade	Mohammad-Ali Jamalzadeh	proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>مشهورترین رمان علی محمد افغانی، شوهر آهو خانم است.</p> <p>mashhoortarin romaan-e ali mohammad-e afqaani, shohar-e aahoo khaanoom ast.</p> <p>Ali Mohammad Afghani's most famous novel is Lady Ahou's Husband.</p>	<p>صادق هدایت تعداد زیادی داستان کوتاه و رمان منتشر کرد.</p> <p>saadeq hedaayat te'daad-e ziaadi daastan-e kootaah va romaan montasher kard.</p> <p>Sadegh Hedayat published many short stories and novels.</p>
--	---

بهترین رمان بزرگ علوی، چشم هایش،
در سال ۱۹۵۲ در ایران منتشر شد.

behtarin romaan-e bozorg-e alavi,
cheshmhaayash, dar saal-e 1952 dar iraan
montasher shod.

Bozorg Alavi's finest novel is Her Eyes,
which was published in Iran in 1952.

موفق ترین اثر سیمین دانشور، رمان
سووشون است.

movaffagh tarin asar-e simin daaneshvar, romaan-
e soovashoon ast.

The most successful work of Simin
Daneshvar was A Persian Requiem.

محمدعلی جمالزاده را پدر داستان کوتاه ایران می دانند.

Mohammad ali jamaalzaade raa pedar-e daastan-e kootaah-e iraan midaanand.

Mohammad-Ali Jamalzadeh is known as the father of the Persian short story.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Ali Mohammad Afghani

Ali Mohammad Afghani is an Iranian novelist. He wrote his masterpiece *Lady Ahou's Husband* in 1961. The novel depicts the dreadful life of Iranian women in that era. Some of his other works are *Woven of Grief*, *Turnip*, and *Cousin Parvin*.

2. Sadegh Hedayat

Sadegh Hedayat was Iran's leading modern writer of fiction and short stories. His writings also include studies in Persian folklore and many translations from Middle Persian and French. His greatest work was *The Blind Owl*.

3. Bozorg Alavi

Bozorg Alavi was an Iranian writer and intellectual. He helped found the communist Tudeh Party of Iran in the 1940s. After the coup of 1953, he moved to Germany, in exile. His best novel, *Her Eyes*, was banned in Iran after first being published in 1952.

4. Simin Daneshvar

Simin Daneshvar was an academic, writer, and translator. She is regarded as the first major Iranian female novelist. Her first novel was *A Persian Requiem*, which became a bestseller.

5. Mohammad-Ali Jamalzadeh

Jamalzadeh was one of the most prominent writers of Iran in the twentieth century, often referred to as the father of the Persian short story. He's best known for his unique sense of humour.



PersianPod101.com

PersianPod101.com

LEARN PERSIAN

The Master Guide to



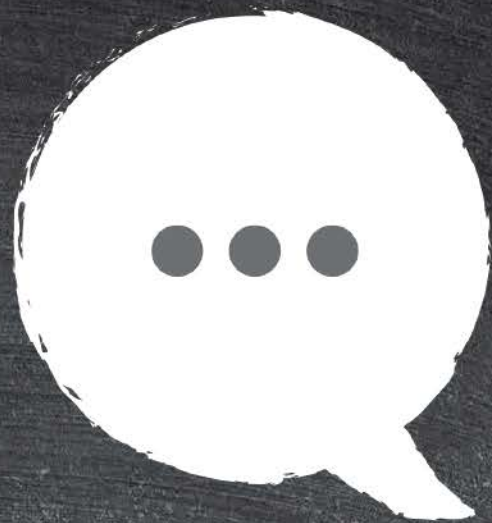
Iranian Holidays

innovativeLANGUAGE.COM

If you love the **Persian** language,
then you'll love this!

Get our Complete **Persian** Learning Program
at **PersianPod101.com**.

- Speak **Persian** From Your First Lesson
- Access hundreds of Audio & Video Courses
by Real Teachers
- Get **FREE** New Lessons Every Week
- Learn Anywhere, Anytime on Any Android
Device or Computer



Go to
PersianPod101.com
and sign up for your

FREE

Lifetime Account!



PersianPod101.com

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #1

New

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

1

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
سفره هفت سین	sofre-ye haft-seen	the seven 'S's table	phrase
خانه تکانی	khaane tekaani	spring cleaning	noun
عید	eid	feast	noun
عمو نوروز	amoo nowrooz	Santa Claus	noun
نوروز	Nowrooz	New Year's Day	proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>سفره هفت سین را می چینم. Sofreye-haft-sin raa michinam.</p> <p>I will set the seven S's table.</p>	<p>(آیا) خانه تکانی تان را شروع کرده اید؟ (Aayaa) khaane-tekaani-ye taan raa shooroo karde-id?</p> <p>Have you begun your spring cleaning?</p>
<p>این عید را در ایران جشن می گیرند. In eid raa dar iraan jashn migirand.</p> <p>This feast is celebrated in Iran.</p>	<p>عمونوروز یکی از نمادهای نوروز است. Amoo nowrooz yeki az namaadhaaye nowrooz ast.</p> <p>Amoo nowrooz is one of the spring symbols.</p>

Nowroozetaan mobaarak!

Happy new year!

نوروزتان مبارک!

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #2

Nature Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

2

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
سبزه	sabzeh	wheat, barley or lentil sprouts growing in a dish – symbolizing rebirth	noun
سیزده به در	Sizdah-Bedar	Nature Day	phrase
پارک	paark	park	noun
سبزه	sabzeh	grass or sprouts	noun
زلزله	zelzeleh	earthquake	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>سبزه سبز کردن کار سختی نیست. Sabzeh sabz kardan kaare sakhti nist. Growing grass is not a tough job.</p>	<p>یک پارک بزرگ در نزدیکی خانه من وجود دارد. Yek paarke bozorg dar nazdikiye khaaneyeye man vojood daaraad. There is a larg park near my house.</p>
<p>سبزه سبز کردن کار سختی نیست. Sabzeh sabz kardan kaare sakhti nist. Growing grass is not a tough job.</p>	<p>یک زلزله شهر را ویران کرد. Yek zelzeleh-i shahr raa viraan kard. An earthquake devastated the city.</p>
<p>iraan keshvari zelzeleh khiz ast. Iran experiences many earthquakes.</p>	<p>ایران کشوری زلزله خیز است.</p>

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #3

Fire Festival

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

3

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
چهارشنبه سوری	chaahaar shanbeh soori	Fire Festival	phrase
شر	sharr	evil	noun
آتش	aatash	fire	noun
آتش بازی	aatash baazi	fireworks	noun
آجیل مشکل گشا	aajil-e moshkel goshaa	mix of nuts	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

دفع شر dafe sharr warding off the evil	آتش گرم است. Aatash garm ast. Fire is hot.
آتش بازی را دوست ندارم. Aatash baazi-e raa doost nadaaram. I do not like fireworks.	آجیل مشکل گشا خوشمزه است. Aajil-e moshkel goshaa khoshmazeh ast. Mix of nuts is yummy.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #4

Ramadan

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

4

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
روزه	roozeh	fast	noun
نماز خواندن	namaaz khaandan	pray	noun
خدا	khodaa	God	noun
سحری	sehri	meal eaten every morning prior to the morning prayer and sunrise	noun
افطاری	iftar	meal eaten every evening after the prayers and sunset	noun
شب های قدر	shabhaaye ghadr	The Nights of Destiny	noun
رمضان	Ramazaan	Ramadan	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>آیا روزه برای سلامتی مفید است؟ (Aayaa) roozeh baraaye salaamati mofid ast? Is fasting beneficial to health?</p>	<p>نماز خواندن بر مسلمانان واجب است. Namaaz khaandan bar mosalmaanaan vaajeb ast. Prayer is obligatory for Muslims</p>
<p>(آیا) به وجود خدا اعتقاد دارید؟ (Aayaa) be vujude khodaa eteghaad darid? Do you believe in God's existence?</p>	<p>چه غذایی برای سحری مناسب است؟ Che ghazaaei baraaye sahari monaseb ast? What food is good for Sehri?</p>
<p>برای افطاری چه چیزی درست کنم؟ Baraaye eftaari che chizi dorost konam? What shall I make for Iftar?</p>	<p>شب های قدر چه شب هایی هستند؟ Shabhaaye ghadr che shabhaaei hastand? What nights are the Nights of Destiny?</p>

مسلمانان در رمضان روزه می گیرند.
Mosalmaanaan dar ramezaan roozeh migirand.

Muslims fast during Ramadan.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #5

Feast of Fast-Breaking

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

5

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
غسل کردن	ghosl kardan	ablution	noun
روز تعطیل	rooz-e tatil	Holiday	phrase
هلال ماه	helaal-e maah	crescent moon	phrase
گناه	gonaah	sin	noun
نماد	namaad	symbol, sign	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>غسل کردن برای حفظ بهداشت فردی است.</p> <p>Ghosl kardan baraa-y-e hefz-e behdaasht fardi ast.</p> <p>Ablution is for maintaining personal hygiene.</p>	<p>روز تعطیلتان را چگونه می گذرانید؟</p> <p>Rooze ta^tiletan raa chegoone mi-gozaraanid?</p> <p>How do you spend your holiday?</p>
<p>هلال ماه رویت شد.</p> <p>Helaal-e maah royat shod.</p> <p>The crescent moon was observed.</p>	<p>(او) گناه بزرگی مرتکب شد.</p> <p>(Oo) Gonaah-e bozorgi mortakeb shod.</p> <p>He committed a great sin.</p>
<p>روزه گرفتن نماد صبر است.</p> <p>Roozeh gerftan namaad sabr ast.</p> <p>Fasting is a symbol of patience.</p>	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #6

9th and 10th Day of Muharram

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

6

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
تاسوعا و عاشورا	taasuaa and aashooraa	9th and 10th day of Muharram	phrase
جنگ	jang	fight	noun
نبرد	nabard	battle	noun
علم	alam	flag	noun
تعزیه	t'aziye	religious play depicting the Battle of Karbala	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>جنگ بین دو کشور تمام شد. Jang-e beyn-e do keshvar tamaam shod.</p> <p>The fight between the two countries was over.</p>	<p>نبرد حق و باطل Nabard-e hagh-o-baatel</p> <p>the battle of right and wrong</p>
<p>میتوانید علم را بلند کنید؟ Mitavaanid alam raa boland konid?</p> <p>Can you hold the Alam? (Are you able to hold the Alam?)</p>	<p>تعزیه در محرم اجرا می شود. T'ziye dar moharram ejraa mishavad.</p> <p>Ta'zieh is performed in Muharram.</p>

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #7

Feast of Sacrifice

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

7

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
تعطیل عمومی	t'atil-e oomoomi	public holiday	phrase
عید قربان	Eid-e Qorbaan	Eid al-Adha (Feast of Sacrifice)	proper noun
قوچ	ghuuch	ram	noun
فرشته	fereshteh	angel	noun
گوسفند	goosfand	sheep	noun
گاو	gaav	cow	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>۲۹ اسفند، روز ملی شدن صنعت نفت، تعطیل عمومی است.</p> <p>Bist-o-nohe esfand, rooz-e melli shodan-e san'at-e naft, ta'til-e oomoomi ast.</p> <p>29 Esfand, day of nationalization of Iran's oil industry, is a public holiday.</p>	<p>به گوسفند نر بالغ قوچ می گویند.</p> <p>Be gusfand-e nar-e baalegh ghuch miguyand.</p> <p>An adult male sheep is called ram.</p>
<p>فرشته موجودی فراطبیعی است.</p> <p>Aya fereshteh moujoodi faraa taabie ast?</p> <p>Is angel is a supernatural being?</p>	<p>به بچه گوسفند، بره می گویند.</p> <p>Be bach'chey goosfand barreh migooyand.</p> <p>A young sheep is called a lamb.</p>
<p>گوسفند دارد چمن های سبز را می خورد.</p> <p>Goosfand daarad chaman haaye sabz raa mikhorad.</p> <p>The sheep is eating the green grass.</p>	<p>گاو و گوسفند حیواناتی اهلی هستند.</p> <p>Gavv va goosfand heyvaanaati ahli hastnad.</p> <p>Cow and sheep are domesticated animals.</p>
<p>Gaavhaa dar dasht dar haale charidan hastand.</p> <p>The cows are grazing in the field.</p>	<p>گاوها در کشتزار در حال چریدن هستند.</p>

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #8

Sadeh Feast

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

8

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
جرقه	jaraghe	spark	noun
صد	sad	hundred	noun
جشن های آتش	jashn-haaye atash	fire celebrations	phrase
جشن سده	jashn-e sade	Sadeh Feast	proper noun
کوه	kooh	mountain	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>جرقه آتش</p> <p>Jaragh'ghe-ye atash</p> <p>fire spark</p>	<p>ما صد نفر مهمان داریم.</p> <p>Maa sad nafar mehmaan darim.</p> <p>We have hundred guests.</p>
<p>چهارشنبه سوری یکی از جشن های آتش است.</p> <p>Chahaarshanbeh Soori yeki az jashn haay-e atash ast.</p> <p>Chahaarshanbeh Soori is one of the fire celebrations.</p>	<p>دماوند بلندترین کوه ایران است.</p> <p>Damaavand bolandtarin kooh-e iran ast.</p> <p>Damaavand is the highest mountain in Iran.</p>
<p>ایستادن بر روی قله یک کوه چه احساس خوبی دارد.</p> <p>Istaadan bar roo-ye gholle-ye yek kooh che ehsaas-e khoobi darad.</p> <p>What an uplifting feeling to stand on the top of a mountain.</p>	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #9

Eid al-Ghadeer

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

9

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
مودت	mavaddat	friendship	noun
عطر	atr	perfume	noun
عید غدیر خم	eid-e ghadir-e khom	Eid-e Qadir	proper noun
غدیر	ghadir	catchment	noun
پیامبر	payaambar	Prophet	noun
کعبه	K'abe	House of God	proper noun
مولا	mawla	lord, master	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>مودت یعنی دوستی. mavaddat y'ani doosti.</p> <p>Mavaddat means friendship.</p>	<p>اسم عطر تان چیست؟ Esm-e atretaan chist?</p> <p>What is the name of your perfume?</p>
<p>غدیر یعنی آبگیر. Ghadir y'ani aabgir.</p> <p>Ghadir means chatment.</p>	<p>پیامبر اسلام حضرت محمد است. Payambar-e eslaam hazrat-e mohammad ast.</p> <p>The Prophet of Islam's Prophet Muhammad.</p>
<p>کعبه مکان مقدسی برای مسلمانان است. K'abe makaan-e moghaddasi baraay-e mosalmaanaan ast.</p> <p>Kaaba is a holy place for Muslims.</p>	<p>مولا علی امام شیعیان است. Mawla Ali emaam-e shi'ayaan ast.</p> <p>Mawla Ali is the Shia's Imam.</p>

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #10

Yalda (Chelleh Night)

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

10

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
شب چله	shabe chelleh	Yaldaa (Chelleh Night)	proper noun
شب	shab	night	noun
خورشید	khorshid	sun	noun
ماه	maah	moon	noun
گردو	gerdu	walnut	noun
هندوانه	hendevaaneh	watermelon	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>شب تاریک است.</p> <p>Shab tarik ast.</p> <p>The night is dark.</p>	<p>برنامه ات برای این جمعه شب چیست؟</p> <p>Barnaame-at barray-e in jom'e shab chist?</p> <p>What's your plan for this Friday night?</p>
<p>هر شب باید کار کنم.</p> <p>Har shab baayad kaar konam.</p> <p>"I have to work every night."</p>	<p>خورشید از شرق طلوع می کند.</p> <p>Khorshid az shargh tol'oo mikonad.</p> <p>The Sun rises in the East.</p>
<p>امشب، ماه کامل است.</p> <p>Emshab, maah kamel ast.</p> <p>Tonight the moon is full.</p>	<p>گردو سرشار از امگا-۳ است.</p> <p>Gerdoosarshaar az omega-3 ast.</p> <p>Walnuts are rich in omega-3.</p>
<p>هندوانه میوه محبوب من است.</p> <p>Hendevaaneh mive-ye mahboob-e man ast.</p> <p>Watermelon is my favorite fruit.</p>	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #11

Birth of Imam Mahdi

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

11

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
ولادت امام زمان	Velaadate emam zaman	Birth of Imam Mahdi	proper noun
شیرینی جات	shirinijaat	sweets	noun
ظلم	zolm	tyranny	noun
ستم	setam	cruelty	noun
برنامه تلویزیونی	barnaamey-e televiziyni	TV program	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>آیا شیرینی جات سنتی ایران را می شناسید؟</p> <p>Aayaa shirinijat-e sonnati-ye iraan raa mishenaasid?</p> <p>Do you know the traditional Iranian sweets?</p>	<p>ظلم به دیگران، ظلم به خود است.</p> <p>zolm be digaraan, zolm be khod ast.</p> <p>Cruelty to others is cruelty to oneself.</p>
<p>ظلم و ستم</p> <p>zolm -o- setam</p> <p>tyranny and cruelty</p>	<p>برنامه تلویزیونی محبوب شما چیست؟</p> <p>Barnaame-ye televiziyni-ye mahboob-e shomaa chist?</p> <p>What is your favorite TV program?</p>

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #12

Mother's Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

12

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
روز مادر	Rooz-e Maadar	Mother's Day	noun
ایزد بانو	Izad Banoo	goddess	noun
هدیه	hedye	gift	noun
گل	Gol	flower	noun
جواهر آلات	javaaher aallaat	jewelry	noun
مادر	Madar	mother	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>آناهیتا یک ایزدبانوی ایرانی است. Aanaahita yek izad banoo-ye irani ast.</p> <p>Anahita is a Persian goddess.</p>	<p>چه هدیه ای برای روز مادر بخرم؟ Che hedye-i barray-e rooz-e maadar bekharam?</p> <p>What gift shall I buy for the mother's day?</p>
<p>گل می تواند هدیه خوبی باشد. Gol mitavaanad hedye-ye khubi bashad.</p> <p>Flowers would be nice gifts.</p>	<p>او گل ها را هر روز صبح آب می دهد. Oo golhaa raa har rooz aab midahad.</p> <p>He waters flowers every morning.</p>
<p>گل 'هدیه خوبی است. Gol, hediye khubi ast.</p> <p>Flowers are a good present.</p>	<p>اکثر خانم ها جواهرالات را دوست دارند. Aksar-e khanoom haa javaaher aalaat ra doost daran.</p> <p>Most women like jewelry.</p>

مادرم را دوست دارم.

Maadaraam ra doost daram.

I love my mother.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #13

Nationalization of Oil Industry Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

13

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
شرکت ملی نفت ایران	sherkat-e melli-ye naft-e iraan	Iran's National Oil Company	phrase
ملی شدن صنعت نفت	Melli shodan-e san'at-e naft	Nationalization of Oil Industry Day	phrase
نفت	naft	oil	noun
بنزین	benzin	gasoline	noun
تخفیف	takhfif	discount	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>شرکت ملی نفت ایران کارمندان زیادی دارد.</p> <p>sherkat-e melli-ye naft-e iraan kaarmandaan-e ziyadi daard.</p> <p>National Iranian Oil Company has many employees.</p>	<p>ایران نفت دارد.</p> <p>iraan naft daarad.</p> <p>Iran has oil.</p>
<p>بنزین گران شده است.</p> <p>benzin geraan shode ast.</p> <p>Gasoline has become expensive.</p>	<p>تخفیف می دهید؟</p> <p>takhfif midahid?</p> <p>Do you give a discount?</p>

در این فروشگاه، تخفیف ویژه تابستانی ارائه می شود.
dar in fooroshgah, takhfif-e vizhey-e tabestaani eraaeh mishavad.

In this shop, they offer a special summer discount.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #14

Mission of Prophet Mohammad (Mab'as Feast)

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

14

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
پیامبر	payaambar	messenger	noun
نبی	nabi	Prophet	noun
قدر	ghadr	destiny	noun
حرم	haram	shrine	noun
غار	ghaar	cave	noun
عید مبعث	Eid-e Mab'as	Mission of Prophet Mohammad (Mab'as Feast)	proper noun, phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>چرا همه پیامبران به خاورمیانه فرستاده شدند؟</p> <p>Cheraa hameye payaambaraan beh khaavar-e miyaaneh ferestaadeh shodand?</p> <p>Why were all the mesengers sent to the Middle East?</p>	<p>نبی اکرم</p> <p>Nabi-ye akram</p> <p>Prophet (Muhammad)</p>
<p>مسلمانان شب قدر را گرامی میدارند.</p> <p>mosalmaanaan shab-e ghadr raa geraami midaarand.</p> <p>Muslims appreciate the night of destiny.</p>	<p>حرم امام رضا در مشهد است.</p> <p>haram-e emaam rezaa dar mashhad ast.</p> <p>Shrine of Imam Reza is in Mashhad.</p>
<p>bozorgtarin ghaar-e aabi-ye jahaan dar iraan ast.</p> <p>The world's largest water cave is in Iran.</p>	<p>بزرگترین غار آبی جهان، در ایران است.</p>

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #15

Cooking Haleem Ceremony

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

15

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
مراسم حلیم پزی	maraasem-e halim pazaan	Cooking Haleem Ceremony	phrase
مواد تشکیل دهنده	mavaad-de tashkil dahandeh	ingredients	phrase
زردچوبه	zardchoobeh	turmeric	noun
زیارت	ziyaarat	pilgrimage	noun
حلیمی	haleemi	haleem restaurant	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>مواد تشکیل دهنده املت تخم مرغ، گوجه، روغن و ادویه هستند.</p> <p>mavaad-de tashkil dahande-ye omlet tokhm-e morgh, gowjeh, roghan va adviyeh hastand.</p> <p>Ingredients of an omelette are egg, tomato, oil and spice.</p>	<p>زردچوبه خواص درمانی دارد.</p> <p>zardchoobeh khavaas-se darmaani darad.</p> <p>Turmeric has healing properties.</p>
<p>دوستانم به زیارت می روند.</p> <p>doostaanam beh ziyaarat miravand.</p> <p>My friends go on a pilgrimage.</p>	<p>این نزدیکی حلیمی هست؟</p> <p>in nazdiki haleemi hast</p> <p>Is there a Haleem restaurant near here?</p>

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #16

Proposals and Engagements

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

16

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
خواستگاری و نامزدی	khaastegaari va naamzadi	Proposals and Engagements	phrase
خواستگار	khaastegaar	proposer (future groom)	noun
مهمانی	mehmaani	party	noun
دختر	dokhtar	girl	noun
هزینه ها	hazineh-ha	costs	noun
جهیزیه	jahiziyeh	dowry	noun
حنا	hanaa	henna	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>امشب، خواستگار می آید. emshab khaastegaar miaayad.</p> <p>Tonight, the proposer comes.</p>	<p>فردا شب به مهمانی می رویم. fardaa shab beh mehmaani miravim.</p> <p>Tomorrow night we go to a party.</p>
<p>دختر زیبایی دارید. dokhtar-e zibaa-i daarid.</p> <p>You have a beautiful daughter.</p>	<p>از پس هزینه های زندگی بر می آید؟ az pas-e hazin-haay-e zendegi bar miaeed?</p> <p>Do you afford the living costs?</p>
<p>جهیزیه ام کامل است. jahiziye-am kaamel ast.</p> <p>My dowry is complete.</p>	<p>حنا سبز است. hanaa sabz ast.</p> <p>Henna is green.</p>

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #17

Wedding Ceremony

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

17

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
عاقده	Aaghed	religious figure that directs the wedding ceremony	noun
حلقه	halgheh	ring	noun
سفره عقد	sofre-ye aghd	wedding cloth	phrase
کله قند	kaleh ghand	sugar loaves	noun
سالن	saalon	hall	noun
جشن عروسی	jashn-e aroosi	wedding ceremony	phrase
نامزدی	naamzadi	engagement	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>عاقده خطبه عقد را می خواند. aaghed khotbe-ye aghd raa mikhaand.</p> <p>The "aghed" reads the wedding vows.</p>	<p>حلقه گرانی است. halgheye geraani ast.</p> <p>It's an expensive ring.</p>
<p>سفره عقد را خودتان می چینید؟ sofr-ye aghd raa khodetaan michinid?</p> <p>Do you set the wedding cloth yourself?</p>	<p>دو تا کله قند لازم داریم. do taa kaleh ghand laazem daarim.</p> <p>We need two sugar loaves.</p>
<p>هزینه اجاره سالن چقدر است؟ hazine-ye ejaare-ye saalon che ghadr ast.</p> <p>How much does it cost to rent the hall?</p>	<p>نامزدی را در خانه دختر می گیرند. naamzadi raa dar khaane-ye dokhtar migirand.</p> <p>The engagement party is held at the girl's house.</p>

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #18

After the Wedding Celebrations

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

18

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
پاتختی و پاگشا	Paatakhti va Paagoshaa	After the Wedding Celebrations	phrase
صندلی	sandali	chair	noun
خانوم ها	Khaanoom haa	women	noun
خانه	khaaneh	home	noun
ماه عسل	maah-e asal	honeymoon	phrase
عسل	asal	honey	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>صندلی چوبی شکست.</p> <p>sandali-ye choobi shekast.</p> <p>The wooden chair broke.</p>	<p>جایگاه خانم ها، در کشورهای مختلف، متفاوت است.</p> <p>jaaygaah-e khaanoom-haa dar keshvar haa-ye mokhtalef motefavet ast.</p> <p>The position of women differs in different countries.</p>
<p>خانه کوچکی داریم.</p> <p>khaane-ye koochaki daarim.</p> <p>We have a small house.</p>	<p>ماه عسل به پاریس می رویم.</p> <p>maah-e asal be paaris miravim.</p> <p>We go to Paris for the honeymoon.</p>

عسل دوست دارید؟

asal doost darid?

Do you like honey?

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #19

Making Rose Water

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

19

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
نیچه	neycheh	long and thin aluminum pipes used for rosewater production	noun
گلاب گیری	golaabgiri	making rose water	proper noun
گلاب	golaab	rose water	noun, proper noun
گل محمدی	gol-e mohammadi	Damask rose, type of rose, hybrid of rose and damascena	noun
سلامتی	salaamati	health	noun
رودخانه	roodkhaneh	river	noun
آب	aab	water	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>نیچه از جنس آلومینیوم است. neycheh az jense alominyom ast.</p> <p>"Neycheh" is made of aluminum.</p>	<p>بوی گلاب را دوست دارم. boo-ye golaab raa doost daaram.</p> <p>I like the smell of rose water.</p>
<p>گلاب دارای رایحه‌ای خوش می باشد که در آشپزی ایرانی بسیار مورد استفاده قرار می گیرد. golaab daaraaye raayehe'i khosh mibaashad ke dar aashpazi-e iraani besyaar mored-e estefaade qaraar migirad.</p> <p>Rose water has a very distinctive flavor and is used heavily in Persian cuisine.</p>	<p>گل محمدی گل خوشبویی است. gol-e mohammadi gol-e khosh booi ast.</p> <p>Damask rose is a fragrant flower.</p>
<p>سلامتی نعمت بزرگی است. salaamati ne'mat-e bozorgi ast.</p> <p>Health is a great blessing.</p>	<p>نیل طولانی ترین رودخانه در جهان است. nil toolani tarin roodkhaaneh dar jahan ast.</p> <p>The Nile is the world's longest river</p>

<p>آب مايه حيات است.</p> <p>Aab maye-ye hayaat ast.</p> <p>Water is our lifeblood.</p>	<p>آب، لطفا.</p> <p>aab, lotfan.</p> <p>Water, please.</p>
--	--

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #20

Feast of Sympathies

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

20

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
کتاب	ketaab	book	noun
مداد	medaad	pen, pencil	noun
بچه ها	bachchehaa	children	noun
نیکوکاری	Nikoo-kari	charity	phrase
جشن عاطفه ها	jashn-e aatefeh	Feast of Sympathies	proper noun, phrase
عاطفه	Aatefeh	sense, sympathy, affection and compassion	noun
مدرسه	madreseh	school	noun
دفتر	daftar	notebook	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>این کتاب خیلی بامزه اس. in ketaab kheily ba maz-zas.</p> <p>This book is pretty funny.</p>	<p>چند تا کتاب خریدید؟ chand ta ketaab kharidid?</p> <p>How many books did you buy?</p>
<p>یک مداد و یک تراش میخوام. yek medaad va yek tarash mikhaaham.</p> <p>I want a pencil and pencil sharpener.</p>	<p>بزرگ کردن بچه ها سخت است. bozorg kardan-e bachchehaa sakht ast.</p> <p>Raising children is hard.</p>
<p>جشن نیکوکاری هر سال در اسفند ماه برگزار می شود. jashn-e nikoo kaari har saal dar esfand maah bargozaar mishavad.</p> <p>Every year Charity Celebration is held in March.</p>	<p>یک ذره عاطفه در وجودش نیست. yek zareh aatefeh dar vojoodash nist.</p> <p>There's not a little bit of emotion in him.</p>

مدرسه را دوست ندارد.

madreseh raa doost nadaarad.

He doesn't like school.

خواهرم هنوز به مدرسه نمی رود.

Khaaharam hanooz beh madrese nemiravad.

My sister doesn't go to school yet.

چند تا دفتر لازم دارید؟

chand taa daftar laazem daarid?

How many notebooks do you need?

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #21

Arbor Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

21

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
درخت	derakht	tree	noun
کاغذ	kaaghaz	paper	noun
مداد	medaad	pencil	noun
اکسیژن	oksigen	oxygen	noun
قهرمان	ghahremaan	hero	noun
بوته	bootteh	bush	noun
روز درختکاری	rooz-e derakhtkaari	Arbor Day	proper noun, phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>یک درخت بکاریم.</p> <p>Yek derakht bekarim.</p> <p>Let's plant a tree.</p>	<p>لطفا یک کاغذ به من بدهید.</p> <p>Lotfan yek kaaghaz beh man bedahid.</p> <p>Give me a piece of paper, please.</p>
<p>مداد دارید؟</p> <p>medaad darid?</p> <p>Have a pencil?</p>	<p>هیچ موجود زنده‌ای بدون اکسیژن نمی‌تواند زنده بماند.</p> <p>Hich mowjood-e zende-i bedoon-e oksigen nemitavaanad zنده bemaanad.</p> <p>No living being can survive without oxygen.</p>
<p>قهرمان بچگی تان که بود؟</p> <p>Ghahremaan-e bachhegiyetaan keh bood?</p> <p>Who was your childhood hero?</p>	<p>خرگوش به سمت بوته دوید.</p> <p>Khargoosh beh samt-e bootteh david.</p> <p>The rabbit ran towards the bush.</p>

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #22

Philanthropy Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

22

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
کنسرت	konsert	concert	
جشن نیکوکاری	jashn-e nikookaari	Philanthropy Day	proper noun,phrase
احسان	Ehsan	lit. 'doing good deeds'	noun
عطایا	ataayaa	donations	noun
وقت	Vaght	time	noun
بانک	baank	bank	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>کنسرت های تابستانی concert-haaye taabestaani</p> <p>Summer Concerts</p>	<p>احسان یک کلمه عربی است. Ehsaan yek kalame-ye arabi ast.</p> <p>Ehsan is an Arabic word.</p>
<p>عطایا یک اسم جمع است. Ataayaa yek esme jam' asat.</p> <p>"Ataayaa" is a plural noun.</p>	<p>وقت ندارم. Vaght nadaaram.</p> <p>I don't have time.</p>
<p>وقت آزاد خود را چه کار می کنی؟ Vaghte azade khod ra che kar mikoni?</p> <p>How do you spend your free time?</p>	<p>خواهرش در بانک کار می کند. Khaaharash dar baank kaar mikonad.</p> <p>His sister works in a bank.</p>

او باید بانکی که سرویس بهتری ارائه میکند را پیدا کند.
oo baayad baanki ke servic-e behtari eraaeh mikonad raa peydaa konad.

He has to find a bank that offers a better service.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #23

Mehregan Feast

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

23

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
مهرگان	Mehregaan	Mehregan Feast	noun
نیکی	niki	goodness	noun
نور	noor	light	noun
کشاورز	keshaavarz	farmer	noun
ارغوانی	arghavaani	purple	noun, adjective
مهرگان	mehregan	lit. the feast of love and friendship	noun
زبرجد	zebarjad	peridot	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>نیکی اسم دختر است. "Niki" esm-e dokhtar ast.</p> <p>"Niki" is a girl name.</p>	<p>نور خیلی کم یا خیلی زیاد چشم را اذیت می کند. Noor-e kheily kam yaa kheily ziyaad cheshm raa aziyat mikonad.</p> <p>Too little or too much light hurts the eyes.</p>
<p>من کشاورز هستم. Man keshaavarz hastam.</p> <p>I am a farmer.</p>	<p>رنگ مورد علاقه اش ارغوانی است. Rang-e mored-e alaagheash arghavaani ast.</p> <p>Her favorite color is purple.</p>
<p>زرتشتیان مهرگان را جشن می گیرند. Zartoshtiyaan mehregaan raa jashn migirand.</p> <p>Zoroastrians celebrate "Mehregan".</p>	<p>زبرجد، سبز یا سبز مایل به زرد است. Zebarjad, sabz yaa sabz-e maayel be zard ast.</p> <p>Peridot is green or yellowish green.</p>

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #24

Tirgan - Water's Feast

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

24

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
آرزو	aarezoo	wish	noun
آپوش	Aapoosh	red star	proper noun
تیرگان	Tirgaan	Tirgan - Water's Feast	noun
فال کوزه	Faal-e Koozeh	jug fortune-telling	phrase
دست بند تیر و باد	Dastband-e Tir o Baad	arrow and wind bracelet	phrase
سپندارمذ	Spendarmaz	goddess of Earth	noun
تیر	tir	arrow	noun
آب	aab	water	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>آرزویم برآورده شد. Aarezooyam baraavardeh shod. My wish was fulfilled.</p>	<p>آپوش در صورت فلکی عقرب است. Aapoosh dar soorat-e falaki-ye aghrab ast. The "red star" is in the constellation of Orion</p>
<p>فال کوزه یکی از رسوم تیرگان است. Faal-e koozeh yeki az rossom-e tirgaan ast. "Jug fortune-telling" is one of the "Tirgan"'s rites.</p>	<p>دست بند تیر و باد هفت رنگ دارد. Dastband-e Tir o Baad haft rang daarad. "Arrow and wind" bracelet has seven colors.</p>
<p>سپندارمذ الهه حامی زمین است. Sepandaarmaz elaahe-ye haami-ye zamin ast. Sepandar mazd" patron goddess of the earth.</p>	<p>چو تیر از کمان رفت نباید به شست باز. Cho tir az kamaan raft nayaayad be shast baaz. What's done is done.</p>

<p>آب مايه حيات است.</p> <p>Aab maye-ye hayaat ast.</p> <p>Water is our lifeblood.</p>	<p>آب، لطفا.</p> <p>aab, lotfan.</p> <p>Water, please.</p>
--	--

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Iran

S1 #25

Funeral Ceremony

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

25

VOCABULARY

Persian	Romanization	English	Class
خاک	khaak	soil	noun
دخمه	dakhmeh	Tower of silence	noun
مراسم تشییع جنازه	maraasem-e tashi-e jenaazeh	Funeral Ceremony	phrase
بدن	badan	body	noun
کفن	kafan	long white cotton cloth used to cover the body of the deceased	noun
قبرستان	qabrestaan, ghabrestaan	cemetery	noun
سیاه	siaah, siyaah	black	noun, adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>ایران خاک حاصلخیزی دارد. Iraan khaak-e haasel khizi daarad.</p> <p>Iran has a fertile soil.</p>	<p>زرتشتیان مردگان خود را به دخمه می بردند. Zartoshtiyaan mordegaan-e khod raa be dakhmeh mibordand.</p> <p>Zoroastrians took their dead to the tower of silence.</p>
<p>عقل سالم در بدن سالم. Aghl-e saalem dar badan-e saalem.</p> <p>A sound mind in a sound body.</p>	<p>کفن سفید است. Kafan sefid ast.</p> <p>"Kafan" is white.</p>
<p>بزرگترین قبرستان ایران، بهشت زهرا، در تهران است. Bozorgtarin ghabrestaan-e iraan, behesht-e zahraa, dar tehraan ast.</p> <p>The largest cemetery of Iran, Behesht-e Zahra, is in Tehran.</p>	<p>سیاه نماد غم نیست. Siyah namaad-e gham nist.</p> <p>Black is not a symbol of sadness.</p>